SPECIFICATIONS GROUP		
	Facility Services Subgroup	
DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)		
230500	COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC	4
230510	SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS FOR HVAC WORK	3
230513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT	12
230517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING	4
230518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING	2
230529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	10
230548.13	VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC	3
230553	IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	5
230593	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC	15
230713	DUCT INSULATION	10
230719	HVAC PIPING INSULATION	17
230900	HVAC INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROLS	58
232113	HYDRONIC PIPING	8
232300	REFRIGERANT PIPING	6
233113	METAL DUCTS	9
233300	AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES	6
233713.23	AIR REGISTERS AND GRILLES	3
238123	COMPUTER ROOM AIR CONDTIONERS	9
END OF TAB	LE OF CONTENTS	

Pages

Division

Section Title

## SECTION 230500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Escutcheons.
  - 3. Grout.
  - 4. HVAC demolition.
  - 5. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - 6. Supports and anchorages.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- B. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.2 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

### 2.3 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 HVAC DEMOLITION

A. Disconnect, demolish, and remove HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.

- 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
- 2. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
- 3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
- 4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
- B. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

## 3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- L. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs. Fill annular space between sleeve and structure with grout.
- M. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials.
- N. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

### 3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable tinning flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

#### 3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 3 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 4 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 3. Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### 3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

## 3.6 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

# END OF SECTION 230500

## SECTION 230510 SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS FOR HVAC WORK

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Accompanying drawings show in diagrammatic form the desired arrangements of principal apparatus, piping, ductwork, etc., and shall be followed as closely as possible, but proper judgment must be exercised during installation to secure maximum headroom and space conditions throughout, to obtain a neat arrangement of piping, ductwork and equipment and to overcome local difficulties and interference of structural or other prevailing conditions where encountered, at no additional labor and material cost to the Owner.
- B. Exact locations and arrangements of all parts shall be determined as work progresses the work in all details being subject for review by the Architect, whose decision on all points in question shall be final and binding.
- C. Note that all service connections may not be shown in true position. Each bidder is cautioned to verify same with field conditions.

#### 1.3 SHOP DRAWINGS

- A. Shop drawings submittals covering several pieces or types of equipment (i.e., panelboards, lighting fixtures, sound system, temperature controls, air handling equipment, radiation, plumbing fixtures, etc.) will be treated as a unit and the entire submission will be approved or disapproved. Individual types of sections will not be acted upon separately.
- B. Refer to each trade section for shop drawing list requirements.

### 1.4 SCHEDULE OF MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

A. All electrical materials and equipment shall bear label of Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., shall be listed by them in their list of electrical fittings and shall be approved by them for the purpose for which they are to be used - unless material and equipment are of a type for which the Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. do not list or provide label service.

#### 1.5 ORDINANCES, SERVICES, PERMITS, FEES

A. As required for proper installation of work under this Contract, the above shall be provided for by each trade section in full accordance with requirements of any bureaus and authorities having

jurisdiction, without additional expense to the Owner including but not limited to NFPA, OSHA, UL, ASHRAE. ASME, ASTM, NEC Standards and Regulations and IAPMO.

- B. Certificate of Occupancy or Certificates of Approval shall be obtained by each Contractor, which must be delivered to the Architect before final acceptance of the work.
- C. Each Trade Section shall procure required building permits to carry out the work. All fees relating to licenses, certificates, inspections, utility connection costs, notices, etc., are to be obtained and paid for by each Contractor as necessary for his work.

### 1.6 COORDINATION AND COOPERATION

- A. Each trade section shall cooperate with the General Contractor and other trade sections doing work on the job. They shall plan their schedule and arrange their work so as not to conflict with the other work including piping, ductwork or with the apparatus or material belonging to other trade sections, or cause undue delays in the progress of the work.
- B. As the work progresses, each trade section shall familiarize themselves with the work to be done by others insofar as it affects their work and shall promptly give such information to others as affects their mutual interests. They shall notify the Architect of any condition that might prevent the satisfactory completion of their work.
- C. Each trade section shall carefully check job space requirements with the other trade section to make sure that their combined work can be installed in the allotted spaces. They shall coordinate their shop drawings with those of the other trades. This coordination of shop drawings shall be the mutual responsibility of the various trade sections involved. If the individual trade sections do not coordinate their work, they will be responsible for any additional costs that may arise from this lack of coordination. In any case of conflict between the work of the trades, the Architect shall have the final decision.

### 1.7 REDESIGN

- A. If an individual trade section makes, or causes to be made, substitution of equipment of otherwise make any substantial change in the form, type, system or details of construction from those shown on the drawings, they shall pay for all costs arising from such changes.
- B. Trade section requesting such a change shall pay all engineering fees required to check the adequacy of such changes.
- C. Any changes or departures from the construction and details shown on the drawings shall be made only after acceptance is obtained in writing from the Architect.

### 1.8 MATERIAL AND LABOR

A. Furnish all materials and labor necessary to deliver to the Owner a complete system installed in full accordance with local and State laws; same to be furnished as specified, tested and turned over to the Owner in perfect operating condition.

- B. Provide competent supervision in responsible charge of the work, who will be on the site during the erection and installation of material and equipment furnished and until all systems have been put into operative condition and accepted by the Owner.
- C. The equipment shall be of the manufacturer's type, capacities and detailed requirements specified and scheduled on the drawings. Exposed equipment shall be suitably weatherproofed for outdoor installation and operation. Items shall be standard products of manufacturers specializing in the type of equipment furnished.
- D. Where two or more units of the same class of equipment are required, these products shall be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component part of the system need not be the products of the same manufacturer. Unit ratings shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's published information and shall be equal to or exceed capacities specified. All equipment shall be installed in strict accordance with the drawings, manufacturer's recommendations and applicable governing codes. Major components of equipment shall have a nameplate affixed in the conspicuous place showing manufacturer's name, address and catalog number.
- E. All materials shall be new, of best quality of their respective kinds. Workmanship shall, in all respects, be of the highest grade and all construction shall be done according to the best practice of the trade.
- F. Where the words "furnish", "provide", or "install" are mentioned, either singly or in combination, there words are hereby interpreted to mean "furnish and install" or "provide and install" including any connection unless specifically noted otherwise. These words are likewise hereby interpreted as being prefixed to all materials, equipment and apparatus hereinafter mentioned either in abbreviated or schedule information.

# 1.9 UNION LABOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Each trade section shall pay all additional costs arising out of union requirements necessitating additional work in the installation of materials and equipment arising from conformance with Contract requirements.

# 1.10 PROTECTION OF WORK AND MATERIALS

- A. Each trade section shall protect the work and material of all other trades from damage by their work or workmen, and shall make good all damage thus caused.
- B. Each trade section shall be responsible for work and equipment until finally inspected, tested and accepted; protect work against theft, injury or damage and carefully store material and equipment received on the site which are not immediately installed. Close open ends of work with temporary covers or plugs during the work to prevent entry of obstruction material.
- C. All materials delivered to the site shall be adequately protected from exposure to weather until time of installation. Temporary storage at the site shall be kept to a minimum. Protect equipment and material with polyethylene covering and keep above grade by the use of wood pallets.

### 1.11 EXISTING CONDUITS, SEWERS, PIPES, ETC.

- A. Do everything necessary to protect, support and sustain all sewers, water or gas pipes, service pipes, electric lines, power, telephone or telegraph poles and conduits laid across or along the site of the work. The Architect, as well as the company or corporation owning said pipes, poles or conduits must be notified of same, before any such fixtures are removed or molested. In case any of the said sewer, gas or water pipes, service pipes, electric light, power, telephone or telegraph poles, conduits or other fixtures are damaged, they shall be repaired by the authorities having control of the same, and the expense of said repairs shall be deducted from the moneys which are due or to become due under this Contract.
- B. Should it become necessary to change to position, or temporarily remove any electric conduits, water pipes, gas pipes, or other pipes or wires, in order to permit use of a particular method of construction or in order to clear the structure being built, notify the Architect of the location and circumstances and cease work, if necessary, until satisfactory arrangements have been made by the owner of said pipes or wires to properly care for the same. No claims for damages will be allowed on account of any delay occasioned thereby. The entire cost of the changes or temporary removal must be taken care of under this Contract at no additional cost to the Owner.

### 1.12 ELECTRIC MOTORS

- A. All motors shall be built in accordance with the latest standards of NEMA and as specified. Motors shall be tested in accordance with ASAC50 and shall conform thereto for insulation resistance and dielectric strength. Motors shall be provided with adequate starting and protective equipment as specified or required, with conduit terminal box. Motors shall have sufficient capacity to operate associated driven devices under all conditions of operation and load without overload and shall have not less than the horsepower rating indicated or specified.
- B. All motor drives shall be protected by heavy galvanized iron wire crimped mesh securely fastened by heavy angle iron frames in conformance with State Code Requirements.
- C. Unless specified otherwise, all motors 1/2 horsepower and over shall be 3 phase and all motors 1/3 horsepower and under shall be single phase.
- D. Electrical motors shall not be operated until the following is established:
  - 1. Voltage available on all phases in accordance with nameplate rating.
  - 2. Full load amperage reading is not in excess of nameplate rating.
  - 3. Full load voltage reading is not less than nameplate rating.
  - 4. Direction of rotation is checked.

#### 1.13 ELECTRICAL WIRING

- A. Unless specifically otherwise herein specified, all electrical power wiring to various motors, automatic temperature control panels, etc. requiring same, will be furnished and installed by the Electrical trade section.
- B. The installation and wiring of all automatic temperature control devices, as well as interlocking wiring between controls, starters, etc., shall be provided by the ATC Contractor. See the sections titled "Instrumentation and Control. For HVAC" appropriate sections in Division 26.

C. Each trade section will set his equipment and all controls. The Electrical trade section shall mount and wire separate starters, etc., which are delivered to him by the Mechanical trade section.

## 1.14 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Except as otherwise provided, each trade section shall do all cutting, drilling, supporting, framing, patching and restoring that may be required in connection with their work; and shall pay for the restoration of work of other trade sections which is damaged.
- B. The General Contractor shall be responsible for restoration of roofing, building in of flashing provided hereunder and providing plastic base flashing against curbs, equipment, duct or pipe supports for all new construction areas and for existing building areas that are to have new roofing installed under this project. The applicable trade contractor shall be responsible for restoration of roofing, building in of flashing provided hereunder, and providing plastic base flashing against curbs, equipment, duct or pipe supports that are to be installed on the existing building roofs that are not to be replaced under this project.
- C. Where lead paint exists, contractor shall be aware of lead paint in the building and to comply with all standards of OSHA when proceeding with the installation of any work. Contractor shall protect their employees and the building in accordance with any applicable Rules and Regulations.

### 1.15 OFFSETS, TRANSITIONS AND CHANGES IN DIRECTION

A. Offsets, transitions and changes in direction of pipes, ducts, electrical raceways shall be made as required to maintain proper headroom and pitch of sloping lines whether or not indicated on the Drawings. Each trade section shall install all air vents, sanitary vents, pull boxes, etc., as required to affect these offsets, transitions and changes in direction at no additional cost.

### 1.16 SUPPORTS AND FASTENINGS

A. Supports and fastenings of all mechanical and electrical equipment shall be furnished under respective Sections. All equipment hung from overhead construction shall have weight of equipment distributed by use of channeled iron supports of adequate size for loads imposed, with same substantially fastened to structural support system. Any wall mounted equipment which cannot be supported from architectural or structural materials, shall have its own independent support system furnished by the trade section of which the equipment or piping had been specified. Proposed installation method shall be submitted for review by the Architect.

### 1.17 NAMEPLATES

A. Provide 3/32" thick plastic except in plenum ceilings engraved standard black with white lettering with two (2) hole nameplates on panels, switchgear, disconnect switches, motor starters, toggle switches, push button stations including pump and fans and all other equipment and control devices similar to Seton 2060 series.

B. Sample of nameplate and schedule of locations must be submitted for review prior to fabrication and installation.

## 1.18 CHARTS AND TAGS

- A. All valves, dampers and controls shall be designated by distinguishing numbers and/or letters on required charts and/or diagrams. Install brass tags for valves only; dampers and controls shall have lamocoid identification. Numbers and/or letters on designated items correspond to those on charts and/or diagrams.
- B. Brass tags shall be not less than 1 1/2" in diameter, with depressed black filled numbers not less than 1/2" high and black filled letters not less than 1/4" high.
- C. They shall be securely fastened with approved brass "S" hooks, or brass jack chain, in a manner to permit easy reading. Brass tags (Style 250-BL) and meter seals shall be as furnished by Allen Systems, Inc. Seton Name Plate Company, New Haven, Connecticut or T & B Westline, Raritan, New Jersey.
- D. Each valve, damper, control shall have an identifying letter designating the system and an identifying number designating the unit. Identifying letters for various systems shall be, for example, HW, CW, etc.
- E. Charts of all valves shall be furnished in duplicate to the Owner; said charts to include valve identification number, location, purpose and function.
- F. One chart to be mounted in an aluminum frame with clear glass front and secured on wall where directed. Other chart turned over to the Owner for filing purposes.

### 1.19 ACCESS DOORS

- A. Access doors shall be furnished by the Trade requiring same, for valves, cleanouts, dampers, and adjustment of apparatus where necessary and where required in portions of building where equipment is concealed (ceiling, walls, etc.) including access panels in ceilings. Access doors shall be installed by the General Contractor. Coordinate schedule, proper location and installation with General Contractor.
- B. Access doors shall be angle frame, cold rolled steel, shaped to provide a rabbet on four (4) sides to contain door and confine surface.
- C. Non-rated access doors to be similar to "Milcor", Style K for plastered surfaces, Style M for masonry and tile walls and Style DW for drywall surfaces. For fire rated walls and ceilings, "Milcor" Style UFR shall be furnished. A minimum size of 12" x 12" access doors shall be furnished. Larger sizes shall be furnished if the nature of inspection or service requires same (Example hung ceiling mounted exhaust fan and pull boxes).
- D. Where hung ceilings consist of concealed spline type ceiling tiles, such tiles in which equipment, valves, dampers, gauges, etc., all as described in subparagraph above shall be identified with aluminum markers.

E. Each trade section shall review architectural drawings for location of fire rated areas and provide access doors with proper fire rating.

### 1.20 QUIET OPERATION

A. Equipment shall operate under all conditions of load without any sound or vibration which is objectionable in the opinion of the Architect. In case of moving machinery, sound or vibration noticeable outside of room in which it is installed or annoyingly noticeable inside its own room, will be considered objectionable by the Architect. Such objectionable sound or vibration conditions shall be corrected in an approved manner by the Contractor at his expense.

## 1.21 TESTS

A. Each trade section shall conduct and record the results of all tests necessary to verify the performance of equipment installed hereunder. Tests shall be conducted as specified, or as directed by the Architect. Records shall be submitted to the Architect for his information and file.

## 1.22 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Each trade section shall provide for each item of equipment or apparatus furnished, a complete set of printed instructions obtained from the manufacturer covering proper operation, care, lubrication, cleaning, servicing, adjusting, etc., of item involved, together with special safety instructions; particularly each trade section shall video tape the instructing of the Owner's representative who will operate plant in all such details and provide on format as determined by Owner.
- B. Submit these instructions for approval as rough draft and, after required corrections are made, furnish in a suitable and durable binder to the Architect, in duplicate. Manual shall include a complete set of approved shop drawings.

# 1.23 MANUFACTURER'S REPRESENTATIVE

A. Provide, at appropriate time or as directed by the Architect, the services of a competent factorytrained Engineer of the particular manufacturer of the equipment of items involved, to inspect, adjust and place in proper operating condition any and all such items of manufacture. No additional compensation will be allowed for such services.

# 1.24 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Operating:
  - 1. Each trade section shall, upon completion of all work and of all tests, furnish the necessary skilled labor and helpers for operating their system and equipment for a period of one (1) day of eight (8) hours or as otherwise specified. They shall give at least 48 hours notice to the Owner in advance for this period.

- B. Instructions: Each trade section shall instruct a representative of the Owner as to the operation of all systems. The instructions shall include video of the operation of heating, ventilating and air conditioning systems, plumbing systems, fire protection system and electrical systems. The video shall include each Trade Section going over the entire work with the Owner's representative showing him all locations of control valves, motors, etc., instructing him how to lubricate, how to disconnect motors, etc.
- C. Maintenance Manuals:
  - 1. Submit to the Architect for review, prior to acceptance of the installation, complete and at one time, data. Partial or separate data will not be accepted. Data shall consist of the following minimum submissions.
  - 2. Valve Directory indicating valve locations and functions for each numbered valve. Four (4) copies submitted.
  - 3. Operating and Maintenance Instructions Typewritten step-by-step operating and maintenance instructions, catalogs, data and prints covering pumps, air conditioning equipment and automatic temperature controls.
- D. In addition, the following shall also be included in these manuals:
  - 1. Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning System:
    - a. Automatic Temperature Control System
    - b. Explanation of operating manual and its use
    - c. Description of system
    - d. Starting System
    - e. Winter Operation
    - f. Summer Operation
    - g. Maintenance and Lubrication Chart
    - h. Maintenance Notes
    - i. Recommended list of spare parts
    - j. Manufacturer's literature on description of care of all major items of equipment and all mechanical shop drawings indicated in the HVAC Sections.
    - k. Complete wiring diagrams (all systems), including coordinated wiring diagram with actual field wired color coding.
- E. Furnish to the Owner, one (1) framed chart under laminated clear plastic of each of the following; same to be hung in Equipment room or as directed by the Owner. Provide grommets for mounting on walls.
  - 1. Air Conditioning schematic diagram showing controls, piping and equipment.
  - 2. Schematic diagram of heating system showing controls, piping and equipment.
  - 3. Valve Charts.
- F. Maintenance Schedule A list of each item of equipment requiring maintenance showing the exact type of bearing of every component of each item of equipment and the month of the year when each item of equipment should be inspected or serviced.
- G. Binders Three (3) complete sets of the above data in loose-leaf ring-type binders with permanent covers with permanent identification on back for Owner's use.
- H. Responsibility for HVAC Controls Mechanical trade section shall bear full responsibility for proper installation and operation of all HVAC controls. He shall bear all expenses which arise due to any changes or additions (including affected work of other trades) necessary for the operation of those controls as required.

### 1.25 DAMAGED WORK

- A. Protect and leave in perfect condition all materials, apparatus, fittings, fixtures, and trim in the scope of his section. Should any items be damaged or broken or workmanship molested, no matter by whom such damage is caused, the work must be corrected and damaged items replaced with new items, at no additional cost to the Owner. Any work which needs redoing because of damage shall be done by the skilled trade which originally performed such work.
- B. Any cost adjustments relative to damage to work or materials, shall not be the responsibility of the Owner, Architect, Engineers or their representatives.

### 1.26 GUARANTEE AND WARRANTY OF EQUIPMENT

- A. Each trade section his subcontractors and supplier of equipment shall refer to General Conditions for all requirements.
- B. This guarantee shall be understood to include restoring, correcting or replacing defective equipment and any component associated therewith which has been furnished integral with the equipment by the manufacturer and all costs for labor and material in connection therewith.
  - 1. An item becomes "defective" when it ceases to conform to the Contract Documents. Guarantees begin on the date of substantial completion as established by the Architect.
- C. Upon completion of the work and before applying for final acceptance, furnish a written guarantee stating that the work complies with the provisions of Codes listed herein and the local enforcing authorities, hand that it will be free from defects of material and workmanship for one (1) year.
  - 1. Guarantees shall further state that the contractor will at his own expense, repair or replace any of his material and work which may become defective during the time of the guarantee together with other work damaged as a consequence of such defects.

### 1.27 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Summary:
  - 1. This section specifies the basic requirements for electrical components which are to be furnished for packaged mechanical equipment. These components include, but are not limited to factory installed motors, starters, and disconnect switches furnished as an integral part of packaged mechanical equipment.
  - 2. Specific electrical requirements (i.e., horsepower and electrical characteristics) for mechanical equipment are specified within the individual equipment specification sections.
  - 3. Motor starters not furnished as an integral part of packaged mechanical equipment shall be provided by the contractor furnishing such equipment and turned over to the Electrical Contractor for installation in accordance with the requirements of Division 26.
  - 4. Disconnect switches not furnished as an integral part of packaged mechanical equipment shall be furnished and installed by the electrical contractor in accordance with the requirements of Division 26.
  - 5. All power wiring for mechanical equipment and ATC systems shall be furnished and installed by the Electrical Contractor in accordance with the requirements of Division 26.

All control wiring and interlock wiring, regardless of voltage, shall be furnished and installed by the ATC Contractor.

- B. References:
  - 1. NEMA Standards MG 1: Motors and Generators
  - 2. NEMA Standards ICS 2: Industrial Control Devices, Controllers, and Assemblies.
  - 3. NEMA Standard 250: Enclosures for Electrical Equipment
  - 4. NEMA Standard KS 1: Enclosed Switches
  - 5. Comply with National Electrical Code (NFPA 70).
- C. Submittals: Submit product data for motors, starters, and other electrical components with submittal data required for the equipment for which it serves, as required by the individual equipment specification sections. Submit product data for starters not furnished as an integral part of packaged mechanical equipment.
- D. Quality Assurance: Electrical components and materials shall be UL labeled.
- E. Starters, Electrical Devices and Wiring:
  - 1. Motor Starter Characteristics:
    - a. Enclosures: NEMA 1, general purpose enclosures with padlock ears, except in wet locations shall be NEMA 3R with conduit hubs, or units in hazardous locations which shall have NEC proper class and division.
    - b. Type and size of starter shall be as recommended by motor manufacturer and the driven equipment manufacturer for applicable protection and start-up condition.
  - 2. Manual Motor Starters:
    - a. Provide manual motor starters for all single phase motors that do not require magnetic starters for control.
    - b. Furnish manual starters with pilot lights and switch positions for multi-speed motors.
    - c. Provide overload protection with melting alloy type thermal overload elements sized for their respective motor current draw.
  - 3. Magnetic Starters:
    - a. Hand-Off-Auto switches and pilot lights, properly arranged for single speed or multi-speed operation as indicated.
    - b. Trip-free thermal overload relays, each phase.
    - c. Interlocks, pneumatic switches and similar devices as required for coordination with control requirements of Division-23.
    - d. Built-in 120 volt control circuit transformer, fused from line side, where service exceeds 240 volts.
    - e. Externally operated manual reset.
    - f. Under-voltage release or protection.
  - 4. Motor Connections:
    - a. Flexible conduit, except where plug-in electrical cords are specifically indicated.
- F. Capacitors:
  - 1. Features:
    - a. Individual unit cells:

- 1) all welded steel housing
- 2) each capacitor internally fused
- 3) non-flammable synthetic liquid impregnant
- 4) craft tissue insulation
- 5) aluminum foil electrodes
- b. KVAR size shall be as required to correct motor power factor to 90 percent or better and shall be installed on all motors 1 horsepower and larger, that have an uncorrected power factor of less than 85 percent at rated load.
- G. Disconnect Switches:
  - 1. Fusible switches: Fused, each phase; general duty; horsepower rated; non-fusible quickmake, quick-break mechanism; dead front line side shield; solderless lugs suitable for copper or aluminum conductors; spring reinforced fuse clips; electro silver plated current carrying parts; hinged doors; operating lever arranged for locking in the "OPEN" position; arc quenchers; capacity and characteristics as indicated.
  - 2. Non-fusible switches: For equipment 2 horsepower and smaller, shall be horsepower rated; toggle switch type; quantity of poles and voltage rating as indicated. For equipment larger than 2 horsepower, switches shall be the same as fusible type.

## 1.28 MECHANICAL SYSTEMS TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING

- A. The HVAC Contractor as part of his contract shall provide the necessary manpower to assist the Test and Balancing Contractor in check-out and start-up the HVAC systems.
- B. HVAC Contractor shall furnish and install any additional balancing dampers and valves where necessary in order for the balancing contractor to perform his task. Any air-side and/or water-side components and devices found defective by the balancing contractor while testing, adjusting and balancing, shall be replaced or repaired by the HVAC Contractor in a timely fashion. HVAC Contractor shall insure that access to all components and devices within the system has been furnished prior to system testing, adjusting and balancing.

### 1.29 BASE NAMED MANUFACTURERS OR SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. It shall be the contractor's responsibility to investigate in detail the products of these other manufacturers. The contractor shall be solely responsible for all changes in design, location, dimension, function, and installation involved in selection of other than the Base Named Manufacturer.
- B. The contractor shall be responsible for, and bear all costs for, any and all changes including any required work of any and all other trades, or the Owner and including all of the Architect's and Engineer's redesign costs caused directly or indirectly by the use of equipment other than that listed on the drawings or called for in the specifications.

### 1.30 FINAL PUNCH LIST REQUIREMENTS

A. The contractor for each trade shall indicate <u>in writing</u> to the Engineer that he has completed all previously noted punch list items. The Engineer will not re-visit the construction site to verify

that the work has been completed, until the <u>written statement</u> certifying the completion of all work, including punch list items, is received in his office.

END OF SECTION 23 05 10

## SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

## 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

#### 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

#### 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

#### 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.

- 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

## SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Sleeves.
- 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
- 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
- 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
- 5. Grout.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

#### 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

### 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

#### 2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

### 2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

- 2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions of CMU construction.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- F. Piping with and without insulation passing through gypsum partitions do not require sleeves. Seal annular space between pipe and gypsum with firestop materials.

## 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
  - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

# 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

## 3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
  - 2. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: 22 gauge galvanized-steel split sleeves.
  - 3. Interior CMU Partitions:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.

### END OF SECTION 230517

## SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. Two-Piece, Steel, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

### 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. Two-Piece, Steel, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.

- b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
- d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Two-piece, with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Two-piece, with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Two-piece, with polished, chromeplated finish.
- g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Two-piece, with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping: Two-piece, floor-plate type.

# 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

## END OF SECTION 230518

## SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  - 4. Fastener systems.
  - 5. Pipe stands.
  - 6. Equipment supports.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

- 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
- 2. Pipe stands.
- 3. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Copper Pipe Hangers:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

### 2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

#### 2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.
- F. Pipe shield for trapeze and clevis systems shall be B-Line Snop-N-Shield, polypropylene copolymer material, UL classified ASTM E-84.

#### 2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

#### 2.5 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:

- 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- 2. Base: Stainless steel.
- 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
- 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainlesssteel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
  - 1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  - 2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
  - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
  - 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
  - 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structuralsteel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

### 2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbonsteel shapes.

### 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

- 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
- 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Pipe Stand Installation:
  - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
  - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- M. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

- a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
- b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
- c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weightdistribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weightdistribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
  - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
- 5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.

- 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
- 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

#### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow offcenter closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
  - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  - 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  - 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  - 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steelpipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  - 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  - 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  - 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 8 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  - 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  - 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  - 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  - 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  - 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  - 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  - 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  - 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  - 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  - 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  - 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  - 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  - 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  - 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  - 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  - 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel Ibeams for heavy loads.
  - 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel Ibeams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  - 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  - 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  - 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  - 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  - 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  - 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  - 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  - 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  - 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  - 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  - 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  - 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  - 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

## SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:1. Spring hangers.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
  - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.
  - 1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SPRING HANGERS

- A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression: .
  - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  - 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  - 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
  - 7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
  - 8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork as specified.

B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

# 3.3 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork as specified.

END OF SECTION 230548.13

## SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Duct labels.
  - 5. Valve tags.
  - 6. Warning tags.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Letter Color: White.
  - 3. Background Color: Black.
  - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

- 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

### 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

### 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Durable pretensioned outdoor grade vinyl acrylic.
- C. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; and an arrow indicating flow direction.

- 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
- 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

## 2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- C. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- D. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- E. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- F. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include duct size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.

### 2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
  - 1. Tag Material: Plastic engraved, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled for attachment.
  - 2. Fasteners: Nylon ties
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
  - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included valve location, service and valve size.

## 2.6 WARNING TAGS

A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

- 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
- 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire .
- 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
- 4. Color: Safety-yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

### 3.5 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic-laminated duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts.
- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

### 3.6 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape: 1-1/2 inches, round or square.

### 3.7 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

### END OF SECTION 230553

## SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
    - a. Constant-volume air systems.
    - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
  - 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
    - a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
    - b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
    - c. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.
  - 3. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
    - a. Motors.
    - b. Condensing units.
    - c. Heat-transfer coils.
  - 4. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.
  - 5. Sound tests.
  - 6. Vibration tests.
  - 7. Duct leakage tests.
  - 8. Control system verification.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.

- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - 5. Dates of calibration.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC.
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
  - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC as a TAB technician.
- B. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by NEBB or TABB
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB.
  - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB as a TAB technician.

- C. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 "System Balancing."

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.

- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
  - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
  - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
  - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
  - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
  - 1. Airside:
    - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
    - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
    - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
    - d. Clean filters are installed.
    - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
    - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
    - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
    - h. Ceilings are installed.
    - i. Windows and doors are installed.
    - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

#### 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in ASHRAE 111 and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
  - 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  - 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

#### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

### 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses, close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
    - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
  - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
    - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
  - 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
  - 4. Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
  - 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
  - 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
  - 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
  - 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
  - 1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
  - 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
  - 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
  - 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.

- 1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
- 2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
- 3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
- 4. Mark all final settings.
- 5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
- 6. Measure and record all operating data.
- 7. Record final fan-performance data.

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
  - 1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
  - 2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
  - 3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
  - 4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
    - a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
    - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
    - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
    - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
    - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
    - f. When in full cooling or full heating, ensure that there is no mixing of hot-deck and cold-deck airstreams unless so designed.
    - g. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
  - 5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.

- c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
- d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
- e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
- 6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
  - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
  - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
  - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
  - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
- 7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
  - a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
  - b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
- 8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.
- 9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
  - a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
  - b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  - c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
  - d. Mark final settings.
  - e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
  - f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

### 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
  - 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  - 2. Motor horsepower rating.
  - 3. Motor rpm.
  - 4. Phase and hertz.
  - 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  - 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  - 7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
  - 8. Service factor and frame size.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

### 3.8 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record fan and motor operating data.

### 3.9 DUCT LEAKAGE TESTS

- A. Witness the duct pressure testing performed by Installer.
- B. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified tolerances.
- C. Report deficiencies observed.

### 3.10 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
  - 1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
  - 2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
  - 3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
  - 4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
  - 5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
  - 6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
  - 7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
  - 8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
  - 9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.
- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

### 3.11 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
  - 1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
  - 2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
  - 3. Check the refrigerant charge.
  - 4. Check the condition of filters.
  - 5. Check the condition of coils.

- 6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
- 7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
- 8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.
- B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:
  - 1. New filters are installed.
  - 2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
  - 3. Drain pans are clean.
  - 4. Fans are clean.
  - 5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
  - 6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
  - 1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
  - 2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
  - 3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
  - 4. Balance each air outlet.

### 3.12 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent
  - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

### 3.13 PROGRESS REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

#### 3.14 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
  - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
  - 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
  - 1. Pump curves.
  - 2. Fan curves.
  - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
  - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
  - 3. Project name.
  - 4. Project location.
  - 5. Architect's name and address.
  - 6. Engineer's name and address.
  - 7. Contractor's name and address.
  - 8. Report date.
  - 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  - 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  - 11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  - 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  - 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
  - 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  - 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.

- h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
  - 1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  - 2. Water and steam flow rates.
  - 3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  - 4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  - 5. Terminal units.
  - 6. Balancing stations.
  - 7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
  - 1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Unit arrangement and class.
    - g. Discharge arrangement.
    - h. Sheave make, size in inches and bore.
    - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
    - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
    - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
  - 2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
  - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
    - j. Return airflow in cfm.
    - k. Outdoor-air damper position.

- 1. Return-air damper position.
- m. Vortex damper position.
- F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:
  - 1. Coil Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Coil type.
    - d. Number of rows.
    - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
    - f. Make and model number.
    - g. Face area in sq. ft..
    - h. Tube size in NPS.
    - i. Tube and fin materials.
    - j. Circuiting arrangement.
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Average face velocity in fpm.
    - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
    - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - h. Water flow rate in gpm.
    - i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
    - j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
    - k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
    - 1. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
    - m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
    - n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
    - o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.
- G. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
  - 1. Report Data:
    - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
    - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Duct size in inches.
    - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
    - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
    - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
    - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
    - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.

- k. Barometric pressure in psig.
- H. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
  - 1. Unit Data:
    - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Apparatus used for test.
    - d. Area served.
    - e. Make.
    - f. Number from system diagram.
    - g. Type and model number.
    - h. Size.
    - i. Effective area in sq. ft..
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Air velocity in fpm.
    - c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
    - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
    - e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
    - f. Final velocity in fpm.
    - g. Space temperature in deg F.
- I. Instrument Calibration Reports:
  - 1. Report Data:
    - a. Instrument type and make.
    - b. Serial number.
    - c. Application.
    - d. Dates of use.
    - e. Dates of calibration.

### 3.15 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. Engineer shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- B. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- C. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- D. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:

- 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
- 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
- 3. If the second verification also fails, Engineer may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.16 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

## SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply air.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
  - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

### 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.
    - e. Owens Corning.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.
    - e. Owens Corning.

### 2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. 3M.
    - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - c. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - d. Nelson Firestop; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
    - e. Thermal Ceramics.
    - f. Unifrax Corporation.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. See Editing Instruction No. 1 in Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.

#### 2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

#### 2.5 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  - 5. Color: Aluminum.

#### 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  - 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  - 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  - 4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  - 5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

#### 2.7 TAPES

- A. FSK Tape: Aluminum or Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
    - b. Compac Corporation.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
    - d. Knauf Insulation.
    - e. Venture Tape.

- 2. Width: 3 inches.
- 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
- 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
- 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
- 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- 8. Aluminum Foil Tape.

#### 2.8 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
  - 2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
  - 1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
    - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inchdiameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
  - 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
    - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 1/2-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 18 gage copper or black wire.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

- 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
- 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

## 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as per the manufacturer's instructions.

- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.

2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: install as per the manufacturer's instructions, secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1.

B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Install as per the manufacturer's instructions, secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

## 3.6 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

## 3.8 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply air.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
  - 1. Fibrous-glass ducts.

- 2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- 3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
- 4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
- 5. Flexible connectors.
- 6. Vibration-control devices.
- 7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

## 3.9 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

# END OF SECTION 230713

## SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
  - 1. Condensate drain piping, indoors.
  - 2. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
  - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
  - 3. Product Data: For coatings, indicating VOC content.
  - 4. Laboratory Test Reports: For coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for lowemitting materials.
  - 5. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
  - 6. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for lowemitting materials.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
  - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.

- 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
- 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
- 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
- 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use.
  - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
  - 2. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
  - 3. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
  - 4. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
  - 5. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

## 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
- G. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  - 1. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ.
  - 2. Type II, 1200 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ

### 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

### 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of **50** g/L or less.
  - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Fiberglass adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

- 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
  - 1. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

### 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
  - 1. VOC Content: 300 g/L or less.
  - 2. Low-Emitting Materials: Mastic coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  - 4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
  - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
  - 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
  - 4. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
  - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.

- 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
- 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
- 4. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
  - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
  - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 3. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  - 4. Color: White.

### 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
  - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
  - 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 5. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

- A. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  - 4. Color: White.
  - 5. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.

6. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

### 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  - 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  - 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  - 4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  - 2. Color: White.
  - 3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- C. Metal Jacket:
  - 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
    - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
    - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - c. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    - d. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

- 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
- 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
- 3) Tee covers.
- 4) Flange and union covers.
- 5) End caps.
- 6) Beveled collars.
- 7) Valve covers.
- 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- D. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Polyguard Products, Inc.

### 2.9 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - 1. Width: 3 inches.
  - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
  - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
  - 1. Width: 2 inches.
  - 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
  - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
  - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
  - 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

- C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
  - 1. Width: 2 inches.
  - 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
  - 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
  - 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
  - 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

### 2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
  - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

- 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

## 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as per the manufacturer's recomendations:
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
  - 4. Manholes.
  - 5. Handholes.
  - 6. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

- 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
- 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
- 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

# 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve

stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.

- 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
- 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
- 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
- 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
- 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating mastic, and flashing sealant.

### D. INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- E. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- F. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

- 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- G. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  - 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- H. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  - 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
  - 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  - 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
  - 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
  - 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  - 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.

- 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  - 1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  - 2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  - 1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  - 2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
  - 3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - 4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

# 3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
  - 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
  - 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  - 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
  - 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

#### 3.8 FINISHES

- A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- B. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  - 2. Underground piping.
  - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

## 3.11 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condensate Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping and Tubing:

- 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch thick.
- 2. NPS 1 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

# 3.12 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping and Tubing:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch thick.
  - 2. NPS 1 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

## 3.13 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. PVC: 30 mils thick.
  - 2. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230719

## SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

# PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:
  - 1. Copper tube and fittings.
  - 2. Joining materials.
  - 3. Transition fittings.
  - 4. Dielectric fittings.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Pipe.
  - 2. Fittings.
  - 3. Joining materials.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal:
  - 1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
  - 2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
  - 3. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.
  - 4. Locations of and details for penetration and firestopping for fire- and smoke-rated wall and floor and ceiling assemblies.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
  - 2. Other building services.
  - 3. Structural members.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- C. Welding certificates.

- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Preconstruction Test Reports:
  - 1. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

# 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
  - 1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
1. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.

## 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L ASTM B 88, Type M.
- B. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

### 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

#### 2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
  - 1. One-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
  - 1. Brass or copper end, solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material, rubber gasket, and threaded union.

#### 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
    - c. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
    - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solderjoint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
    - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
    - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Nipples:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
    - b. Electroplated steel nipple, complying with ASTM F 1545.
    - c. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.

- d. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:
  - 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
  - 2. Schedule 40, Grade B, Type 96 steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- B. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type M, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, soldered joints.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 1/2 ball valve, and short NPS 1/2 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.

- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- P. Install valves according to the following:
  - 1. Section 230523.11 "Globe Valves for HVAC Piping."
  - 2. Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping."
  - 3. Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping."
  - 4. Section 230523.14 "Check Valves for HVAC Piping."
  - 5. Section 230523.15 "Gate Valves for HVAC Piping."
- Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- T. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.
- U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### 3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.

- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraints.
- C. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet.
  - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet.
  - 4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet.
  - 5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet.
  - 6. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 12 feet.
- E. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/4Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
- F. Plastic Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
- G. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.

### 3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

- 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
- 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### 3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

## 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
  - 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
  - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
  - 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
  - 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
  - 5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
  - 1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
  - 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
  - 3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
  - 4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum

yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."

- 5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
- 6. Prepare written report of testing.
- C. Perform the following before operating the system:
  - 1. Open manual valves fully.
  - 2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
  - 3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
  - 4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
  - 5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
  - 6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
  - 7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

### SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
  - 2. Refrigerants.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve, refrigerant piping, and piping specialty.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes; flow capacities; valve arrangements and locations; slopes of horizontal runs; oil traps; double risers; wall and floor penetrations; and equipment connection details.
  - 2. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
  - 3. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
  - 4. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

### 1.7 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
  - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
  - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
  - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

### 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

### 2.3 REFRIGERANTS

A. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410a

A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

- B. Suction Lines NPS 4 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type L, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- C. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- D. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: Copper, Type L, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

#### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- L. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.

- M. When brazing, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- N. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- O. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
  - 1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
  - 2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

#### 3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod, 1/2 inch.
- D. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
  - 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
  - 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
  - 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
  - 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
  - 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
  - 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
  - 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
  - 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
  - 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232300

## SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
  - 2. Sheet metal materials.
  - 3. Sealants and gaskets.
  - 4. Hangers and supports.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible"
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
  - 1. Liners and adhesives.
  - 2. Sealants and gaskets.
  - 3. Seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
  - 3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.

- 4. Elevation of top of ducts.
- 5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
- 6. Fittings.
- 7. Reinforcement and spacing.
- 8. Seam and joint construction.
- 9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
- 10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
- 11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
- 12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal:
  - 1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
  - 2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
  - 3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
  - 4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
  - 5. Design Calculations: Calculations for selecting hangers and supports.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
  - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
  - 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
  - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
  - 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Luminaires.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
    - f. Perimeter moldings.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural

Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel," for hangers and supports.
  - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
  - 3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 "Construction and System Start-up."
- D. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."

#### 2.2 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

- 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
- 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

### 2.3 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
  - 1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
  - 2. Tape Width: 3 inches.
  - 3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
  - 4. Water resistant.
  - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  - 6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  - 7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
  - 8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
  - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
  - 10. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
  - 11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
  - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
  - 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  - 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.

- 4. Water resistant.
- 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
- 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
- 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
- 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
- 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
  - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
  - 2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
  - 3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
  - 4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
  - 5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
  - 6. Water resistant.
  - 7. Mold and mildew resistant.
  - 8. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
  - 9. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
  - 10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
  - 11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  - 12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
  - 1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
  - 2. Type: S.
  - 3. Grade: NS.
  - 4. Class: 25.
  - 5. Use: O.
  - 6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
  - 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
  - 1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
  - 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.

### 2.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
  - 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

## 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible":
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Duct 2 inwc and less: Seal Class B
  - 3. Ducts over 2 inwc : Seal Class A.
# 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

# 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

## 3.6 PAINTING

A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

## 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

- B. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
  - 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
  - 2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
    - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- C. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.8 START UP

A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

## 3.9 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise
- B. Supply air Ducts:
  - 1. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- C. Branch Configuration:
  - 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
    - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
    - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.

# END OF SECTION 233113

## SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

# PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Manual volume dampers.
  - 2. Flange connectors.
  - 3. Flexible connectors.
  - 4. Duct accessory hardware.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.
- B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
    - a. Special fittings.
    - b. Manual volume damper installations.
    - c. Control-damper installations.
    - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
    - e. Duct security bars.
    - f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.

B. Source quality-control reports.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

#### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

# 2.3 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
  - 2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 3. Frames:
    - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
    - b. Mitered and welded corners.
    - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  - 4. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
  - 5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
  - 6. Bearings:
    - a. Molded synthetic.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  - 7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Standard leakage rating.
  - 2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 3. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch-thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  - 4. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch-thick aluminum sheet.
    - e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch-thick extruded aluminum.
  - 5. Blade Axles: Stainless steel.
  - 6. Bearings:
    - a. Molded synthetic.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  - 7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

- C. Jackshaft:
  - 1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
  - 2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
  - 3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- D. Damper Hardware:
  - 1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
  - 2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
  - 3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

## 2.4 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Material: Galvanized steel.
- B. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

# 2.5 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- B. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- D. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- E. High-Temperature System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric coated with silicone rubber.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 16 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 285 lbf/inch in the warp and 185 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.
- F. High-Corrosive-Environment System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric with chemical-resistant coating.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 14 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 450 lbf/inch in the warp and 340 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.

### 2.6 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
  - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- D. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- F. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- G. Connect terminal units to supply ducts with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- H. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- I. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- J. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

#### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.

- 2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
- 3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
- 4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
- 5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 233300

# SECTION 233713.23 - REGISTERS AND GRILLES

# PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fixed face registers and grilles.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - 2. Register and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
  - 5. Duct access panels.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

# 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- 1. Carnes Company.
- 2. METALAIRE, Inc.
- 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
- 4. Price Industries.
- 5. Titus.

# 2.2 FIXED DEFLECTION LOUVERED FACED SUPPLY/RETURN GRILLES/REGISTERS

- A. Device shall be typically of aluminum of the sizes and mounting types indicated on the plans and outlets schedule.
- B. Grilles shall be 0 degree deflection fixed louver type.
- C. Core style shall be as scheduled.
- D. The grille shall be finished in White Powder Coat.
- E. Provide integral damper with the following requirements
  - 1. The integral volume control damper shall be of the opposed blade type and shall be constructed of typically cold rolled steel
  - 2. Where grille is of different material damper shall match grille construction
  - 3. The damper shall be operable from the register face.

# 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate registers and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where registers and grilles are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in

the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

# 3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.23

## SECTION 238123 - COMPUTER ROOM AIR CONDTIONERS

# PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

A. These specifications describe requirements for a ceiling-mounted Thermal Management system. The system shall be designed to control temperature conditions in rooms containing electronic equipment, with good insulation and vapor barrier. The system is also available with an optional humidity control package. The manufacturer shall design and furnish all equipment in the quantities and configurations shown on the project drawings.

## 1.2 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- A. The Thermal Management system shall be a Liebert Mini-Mate Variable Capacity factory assembled unit or engineer approved equal.
- B. On direct expansion models, the refrigeration system shall be split, with the compressor located in a remote condensing unit.
- C. The evaporator section shall be designed for above dropped-ceiling installation. Condensing units shall be designed for outdoor installation. Refer to Section 2.8.2 for condensing unit guide specifications.
- D. Net capacities shall include losses due to fan motor heat. The system cooling capacity shall be factory-certified per ASHRAE127-2007 testing.
- E. System shall be supplied with CSA Certification to the harmonized U.S. and Canadian product safety standard CSA C22.2 No 236/UL 1995 for "Heating and Cooling Equipment" and marked with the CSA c-us logo (60 Hz only).

# 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall be provided after the agreement of the proposal and shall include: Single-Line Diagrams; Dimensional, Electrical and Capacity Data; Piping and Electrical Connection Drawings.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The specified system shall be factory-tested before shipment. Testing shall include, but shall not be limited to: Quality Control Checks, "Hi-Pot" Test (two times rated voltage plus 1000 volts, per NRTL agency requirements), and Metering Calibration Tests. The system shall be designed and manufactured according to world-class quality standards. The manufacturer shall be ISO 9001 certified.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

## 2.1 STANDARD FEATURES

- 2.1.1 Evaporator Cabinet Construction
  - A. The cabinet and chassis shall be constructed of heavy gauge galvanized steel, and shall be serviceable from one side only for routine maintenance.

- B. Mounting brackets shall be integral to the cabinet design.
- C. Internal cabinet insulation shall meet ASHRAE 62.1 requirements for Mold Growth, Humidity & Erosion, tested per UL 181 & ASTM 1338 standards.
- 2.1.2 Remote Sensors
  - A. The unit shall be supplied with remote temperature and humidity sensors. The sensors shall be factory provided in an aesthetically pleasing housing with a 30 ft. (9m), shielded cable and shall be field mounted and field wired to the unit electrical panel.

# 2.1.3 Air Distribution

- A. The fan shall be plug/plenum type, with motorized impeller, single inlet and dynamically balanced.
- B. The drive package shall be direct drive, electronically commutated (EC) and variable speed.
- C. The fan speed shall be automatically regulated through all modes of operation.
- D. The fans shall be located to draw air over the coil to ensure even air distribution and maximum coil performance.
- E. System shall be suitable for ducted supply and return air distribution or bottom-supply grille and ducted-return air distribution. Supply air location shall be field selectable, configured in one of three outlet locations: back of cabinet, right side, or bottom of cabinet.
- 2.1.4 Disconnect Switch, Non-Locking (5,000 amps SCCR)
  - A. The non-automatic, non-locking, molded case circuit breaker shall be factory-mounted in the high-voltage section of the electrical panel.
  - B. The switch handle shall be accessible from the front of the indoor unit.
  - C. The short-circuit current rating for the evaporator unit shall be 5,000 amps.
- 2.1.5 Unit Controls, Protections and Communication Terminals
  - A. The unit shall include a remote 9" color touchscreen display, a filter clog switch, common alarm contact and remote shutdown contacts. Filter clog switch shall be adjustable outside the cabinet and shall activate an iCOM alarm when the pressure drop across the filters exceed the customer-adjustable level.
  - B. Common Alarm Contact shall be one set of normally open contacts which shall close for remote indication of alarms. Remote Shutdown Contact shall enable unit shutdown based on external input.

# 2.2 MICROPROCESSOR CONTROL WITH REMOTE 9" COLOR TOUCHSCREEN

A. The controller shall be microprocessor-based with a remote 9" color touchscreen display and shall be mounted in an ergonomic, aesthetically pleasing housing. The controls shall be menu-driven. The system shall display user menus for active alarms, event log, graphic data, unit view/status overview (including the monitoring of room conditions, operational status in percentage of each function, date and time), total run hours, various sensors, display setup and service contacts. A password shall be required to make system changes. Service menus shall include setpoints, standby settings (lead/lag), timers/sleep mode, alarm setup, sensor calibration, maintenance/wellness settings, options setup, system/network setup, auxiliary boards and diagnostics/service mode. The Controller shall be capable of the following:

• Password Protection - System shall contain two unique passwords to protect against unauthorized changes. An auto hide/show feature allows the user to see applicable information based on the login used.

• Unit Backup and Restore - The user shall be able to create safe copies of important control parameters. The system shall have the capacity for the user to automatically backup unit configuration settings to internal memory or USB storage drive. Configuration settings may be transferred to another unit for a more streamlined unit startup.

• Parameter Download - The system shall enable the user to download a report that lists parameter names, factory default settings and user-programmed settings in .csv format for remote reference.

• Parameter Search - The system shall have search fields for efficient navigation and parameter lookup.

• Setup Wizards - The system shall contain step-by-step tutorials or wizards to provide easy setup of the control.

• Context-Sensitive Help - The system shall have an onboard help database. The database shall provide context sensitive help to assist with setup and navigation of the menus.

• Display Setup - The user shall have the ability to configure the system information based on the specific user's preference. Language, units of measure, screen contrast, home screen layout, backlight timer and the hide/show of certain readouts shall be configurable through the display.

• Additional Readouts - The system shall permit the user to configure custom widgets on the main screen. Widget options shall include items such as fan speed, call for cooling, call for free cooling, maintenance status, call for electric reheat, call for dehumidification, call for humidification, airflow, static pressure, fluid flow rate and cooling capacity.

• Status LED's - The system shall provide the user with the unit's operating status using an integrated LED. The LED shall indicate if the unit has an active alarm; if the unit has an active alarm that has been acknowledged; or if the unit is On, Off or in standby status.

• Event Log - The system shall automatically store the last 400 unit-only events (messages, warnings, and alarms).

• Service Contact Information - The system shall have the ability to store the local service or sales contact information.

• Upgradeable - System upgrades shall be performed through a USB connection.

• Timers/Sleep Mode – The menu shall allow various customer settings for turning on/off unit.

• Menu Layout - The menus shall be divided into two main menu screens: User and Service. The User screen shall contain the menus to access parameters required for basic unit control and setup. The Service screen shall be designed for service personnel and provides access to advanced control setup features and diagnostic information.

• Sensor Calibration – The menus shall allow unit sensors to be calibrated with external sensors.

• Maintenance/Wellness Settings - The menus shall allow reporting of potential component problems before they occur.

• Options Setup - The menus shall provide operation settings for the installed components.

• Various Sensors - The menus shall allow setup and display of optional custom sensors. The control shall include four customer-accessible analog inputs for field-provided sensors. The analog inputs shall accept a 4 to 20mA signal. The user shall be able to change the input to 0 to 5VDC or 0 to 10VDC. The gains for each analog input shall be programmable from the front display. The analog inputs shall be able to be monitored from the front display.

• Diagnostics/Service Mode - The system shall be provided with self-diagnostics to aid in troubleshooting. Control inputs shall be indicated as On or Off at the front display. Control outputs shall be able to be turned On or Off from the front display without using jumpers or a service terminal. Each control output shall be indicated by an LED on a circuit board.

• Base-Comms for BMS Connectivity – The system controller shall provide one Ethernet Port and RS-485 Port dedicated for BMS Connectivity. Provides ground fault isolated RS-485 Modbus, BACnet IP & Modbus IP network connectivity to Building Management Systems for unit monitoring and management. Also, provides ground fault isolated 10/100 baseT Ethernet connectivity for unit monitoring and management. The supported management interfaces include: SNMP for Network Management Systems, HTTP for web page viewing, SMTP for email, and SMS for mobile messaging. The iCOM controller shall support dual IP on one network and one 485 protocol simultaneously. This shall apply to 3Ton units only.

### 2.3 ALARMS

A. All unit alarms shall be annunciated through both audio and visual cues, clearly displayed on the screen, automatically recorded in the event log and communicated to the customer's

J&U Project # 23-019

Building Management System/Building Automation System. The system shall activate an audible and visual alarm in the event of any of the following conditions:

- High Temperature
- Low Temperature
- High Humidity
- Low Humidity
- EC Fan Fault
- Change Filters
- Loss of Air Flow
- Loss of Power
- Humidifier Problem
- High Water (drain pan)
- High Head Pressure
- High Discharge Temperature (Compressor)
- Low Suction Pressure

• Custom Alarms: Custom alarm inputs shall be provided to indicate facility-specific events. Custom alarms can be identified with programmable labels. Frequently used alarm inputs shall include:

- Smoke Detected (requires optional smoke sensor)
- Standby Unit On
- B. Each alarm (unit and custom) shall be separately enabled or disabled, selected to activate the common alarm and programmed for a delay of 0 to 255 seconds.

# 2.4 CONTROL METHODS AND OPTIONS

- A. The Liebert iCOM shall be factory-set to allow precise monitoring and control of the condition of the air entering and leaving the unit. This control shall include predictive methods to control air flow and cooling capacity based control sensors installed. Proportional and Tunable PID shall also be user-selectable options.
- 2.4.1 Controlling Sensor Options
  - A. The Liebert iCOM shall be flexible in the sense that it shall allow controlling the capacity and fan from multiple different sensor selections. The sensor selections shall be:
    - Cooling Capacity
    - Remote
    - Return
    - Fan Speed
    - Remote
    - Return

• Manual (for diagnostics or to receive a signal from the BMS through remote monitoring devices or analog input)

- 2.4.2 Temperature Compensation
  - A. The Liebert iCOM shall have the ability to adjust the capacity output based on return temperature conditions to meet SLA guidelines while operating to highest efficiency.

## 2.4.3 Humidity Control

A. Dew point and relative humidity control methods shall be available (based on user preference) for humidity control within the space.

## 2.5 MULTI-UNIT COORDINATION

A. Unit Teamwork shall save energy by preventing multiple units in an area from operating in opposing modes. Teamwork allows the control to optimize a group of connected units using the U2U (Unit-to-Unit) network. Field wiring shall be required between units' modules. There shall be two modes of teamwork operation:

• Teamwork Mode 1 (Parallel): The controlling temperature and humidity sensor readings of all units in operation (fan On) are collected to be used for an average or worst case sensor reading (user selectable). The master unit shall send the operating requirements to all operating units in the group. The control band (temperature, fan and humidity) is divided and shared among the units in the group. Each unit will receive instructions on how to operate from the Master unit based on how far the system deviates from the setpoints. Evaporator fans and cooling capacity are ramped in parallel.

• Teamwork Mode 2: The system calculates the worse-case demand for heating, cooling humidification and dehumidification. Based on the greatest demand within the group, each unit operates independently, meaning that the unit may respond to the thermal load and humidity conditions based on the units controlling sensors.

## 2.6 STANDBY/LEAD-LAG

A. The system shall allow planned rotation to keep equal run time on units and provide automated emergency rotation of operating and standby units.

## 2.7 STANDBY UNIT CASCADING

A. The cascade option shall allow the units to turn On and Off based on heat load when utilizing Teamwork Mode 1-Parallel, and remote temperature sensors. Cascade mode shall coordinate the fan speed dynamically to save energy and to meet cooling demands. For instance, with a group of six units and only 50% of the heat load, the system shall operate only four units at 80% fan speed and leave the other two units in standby. As the heat load increases, the system shall automatically respond to the new load and bring on another unit, increasing the units in operation to five. As the heat load shifts up or down, the control shall meet the needs by cascading units On or putting them back into standby.

## 2.8 REMOTE MONITORING

A. All alarms shall be communicated to the BMS or Customer Network

## 2.9 DIRECT EXPANSION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

2.9.1 Indoor Evaporator Unit

- A. The evaporator section shall include evaporator coil, thermostatic expansion valve and filter drier. The evaporator coil shall have 5.6 sq.ft. face area, four rows deep. It shall be constructed of internally rifled copper tubes and lanced-type aluminum. An externally equalized thermostatic expansion valve shall control refrigerant flow. The evaporator coil shall be factory-charged with nitrogen and sealed. The system shall be field-charged with field-supplied R-410A refrigerant.
- B. The coil assembly shall be mounted in a condensate drain pan with an internally trapped drain line. The evaporator drain pan shall include a factory-installed float switch to shut down the evaporator upon high water condition.
- 2.9.2 Outdoor Air-Cooled Prop Fan Condensing Unit
  - A. The condensing unit shall be designed for outdoor use with either roof or ground level mounting. The condensing unit is constructed of galvanized and galvanneal painted steel for corrosion resistance.
  - B. Removable exterior panels shall allow access to the electric panel or refrigeration components for service or maintenance.
  - C. Both inlet and outlet air grilles shall be heavy duty steel with a durable polyester coating.
  - D. Condensing unit components shall include a condenser coil, a direct-drive propeller-type fan, a variable capacity Digital scroll compressor, high pressure switch, high compressor discharge temperature switch, insulated receiver with internal heater and head pressure control valve, and liquid line solenoid valve.
  - E. The condensing coil shall be constructed of copper tubes and aluminum fins.
  - F. High head-pressure switch shall protect the unit from abnormal refrigerant pressure conditions. Switch and sensor inputs shall be integrated for compressor protection while maintaining system and evaporator blower operation, displaying alarms at the wall display and providing system shutdown when required.
  - G. A pressure balancing valve shall be factory installed to reduce the chance of opening the high-pressure relief valve due to excessive refrigerant migration to the receiver due to changing outdoor temperatures during offcycles.
  - H. All components shall be factory-assembled, charged with nitrogen and sealed.
  - I. System shall be field-charged with field supplied R-410A refrigerant. No internal piping, brazing, or dehydration shall be required.
  - J. Condensing unit shall be designed 105F ambient and shall be capable of starting and continuous operation down to -30°F. The condensing unit shall be designed to provide stated system capacity at 105°F ambient.
- 2.9.3 Digital Scroll High Temperature Protection

- A. The control shall monitor digital scroll temperature during unit operation. A compressor temperature limit shall be imposed to help prevent damage to the compressor. If the temperature reaches the maximum temperature limit, the compressor shall be locked out and an alarm shall be annunciated on the local display and through remote monitoring. After the initial lockout, the control shall continue to monitor compressor temperature during the off cycle and shall re-enable the circuit once a safe operating temperature is reached (minimum 30- minute lockout). After five high discharge temperature alarms within a rolling 4-hour period the control shall lock out the compressor until power is cycled to the evaporator unit.
- 2.9.4 Digital Scroll Sensor Failure
  - A. The control shall monitor the status of the digital scroll sensor(s). If the control senses the thermistor becomes disconnected, shorted or the reading goes out of range, the user will be notified through an event on the local display and remote monitoring.

# 2.10 FACTORY-INSTALLED OPTIONS

# 2.10.1 Steam Generating Humidifier

A. The Thermal Management system shall be equipped with a steam generating humidifier that is controlled by the microprocessor control system. It shall be complete with disposable canister, all supply and drain valves, 1" air gap on fill line, inlet strainer, steam distributor and electronic controls. The need to change canister shall be annunciated on the wall-mounted controller. An LED light on the humidifier assembly shall indicate cylinder full, overcurrent detection, fill system fault and end of cylinder life conditions. The canister flush water shall not drain into the coil drain pan, due to risk of aggressive corrosion of the evaporator coil. The humidifier wand shall be mounted over the coil drain pan.

## 2.10.5 High-Temperature Sensor

A. The high temperature sensor shall immediately shut down the system when high temperatures are detected. The high temperature sensor shall be mounted with the sensing element in the return air.

## 2.10.6 Smoke Sensor

A. The smoke sensor shall immediately shut down the environmental control system and activate the alarm system when activated. The sensing element shall sense the return air conditions.

# 2.10.7 IS-Unity-DP-CMS Card

- A. The IS-UNITY-DP-CMS Card shall provide mobile cloud access, remote access to the unit level display via the world-wide web and Building Management System (BMS) access via BACnet/Modbus IP and BACnet/Modbus 485. Card shall be factory-installed in the IntelliSlot card housing on outside of cabinet.
- 2.10.8 Low Voltage Terminal Package
  - A. The Low Voltage Terminal Package shall include:

- Two (2) additional remote input shutdown terminals
- Two (2) extra common alarm N/O output contacts
- One (1) main fan auxiliary N/O output contact
- One (1) remote humidifier N/O output contact
- One (1) Liqui-tect input terminals (Liqui-tect priced separately)

# 2.11 SHIP-LOOSE ACCESSORIES

2.11.1 Air Filter Box/Duct Flange

- A. The evaporator section shall be supplied with an optional air filter box kit for use with ducted installations. Two (2) filters shall be included 4" x 20" x 20" (102 mm x 508mm x 508mm) each, pleated type, with a MERV 8 rating, based on ASHRAE 52.2-2007. A duct flange shall be supplied for use on the supply air opening of the unit.
- 2.11.2 410 Point Leak-detection Sensor
  - A. A total of 1 solid-state water sensor(s) with no moving parts and hermetically sealed to keep out dust and dirt shall be provided per unit. The detection system shall provide a single-point detection of leaks. The point detection sensor shall have two gold-plated sensing probes to prevent corrosion resistance and to provide accurate readings. The system shall constantly monitor points for leaks, internal faults, and power failures and warn of any abnormal conditions. Mounting brackets shall allow for sensor height adjustment and leveling. The system shall provide two independent outputs to signal both a local alarm panel and a remote building management system or external equipment. The system shall be rated for 24VAC, 50/60Hz and 0.10 amps. Liqui-tect sensor shall be field mounted and field wired to both monitoring contacts and 24VAC supply power.

# SECTION 230900 - HVAC INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROLS

# PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. General: The Building management system (BMS) system shall consist of a high-speed, peer-to-peer network of DDC controllers, a control system server, and a web-based operator interface.
- B. System software shall be based on a server/thin-client architecture, designed around the open standards of web technology. The control system server shall be accessed using a Web browser over the control system network, the owner's local area network and (at the owner's discretion) over the Internet. The server shall also act as a "workstation" when running as a server/client platform. Additional clients shall have concurrent access to the "workstation" in this mode.
- C. The intent of the thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to the control system via a Web browser. No special software other than a Web browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends, configure trends, configure points and controllers, or to download programming into the controllers.
- D. System shall use BACnet protocol for communication between the control modules and web server. Communication between the web server and the user's browser shall be HTTP or HTTPS protocol utilizing HTML5. Use of Adobe Flash technology is not acceptable.
- E. New devices shall be integrated into the existing Automated Logic system. This is includes adding the devices to the existing database and modification or addition of graphics using the Automated Logic interface. Integration of these devices shall be included with this bid.

## 1.2 APPROVED BMS SYSTEMS

A. Approved control system supplier, manufacturer, and product line:

Automated Logic Corporation, WebCTRL by ALC NY/NJ Branch

Contact: Sergio Ferrante Sr Account Executive (201) 463-0601 Sergio.ferrante@carrier.com

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Adjustable (adj.): Adjustable by the end user, through the supplied user interface.

- B. Advanced Application Controllers (AACs): A fully programmable control module. This control module may be capable of some of the advanced features found in Building Controllers (storing trends, initiating read & write requests, etc.) but it does not serve as a master controller. Advanced Application Controllers may reside on either the Ethernet/IP backbone or on a subnet.
- C. Web Services: Web services are a standard method of exchanging data between computer systems using the XML (extensible markup language) and SOAP (simple object access protocol) standards. Web services can be used at any level within a Building Automation System (BAS), but most commonly they are used to transfer data between BAS using different protocols or between a BAS and a non-BAS system such as a tenant billing system or a utility management system.
- D. Alarm: The control system shall be configured to generate an alarm when this object exceeds user definable limits, as described in the Sequence of Controls.
- E. Analog Value: An intermediate (software) point that may be editable or read-only. Editable AVs are typically used to allow the user to set a fixed control parameter, such as a setpoint. Read Only AVs are typically used to display the status of a control operation.
- F. Application Specific Controllers (ASCs): A pre-programmed control module which is intended for use in a specific application. ASCs may be configurable, in that the user can chose between various pre-programmed options, but it does not support full custom programming. ASCs are often used on terminal equipment such as VAV boxes or fan coil units. In many vendors' architectures ASCs do not store trends or schedules but instead rely upon a Building Controller to provide those functions.
- G. BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBB): A BIBB defines a small portion of BACnet functionality that is needed to perform a particular task. BIBBS are combined to build the BACnet functional requirements for a device in a specification.
- H. BACnet/BACnet Standard: BACnet communication requirements as defined by the latest version of ASHRAE/ANSI 135 and approved addenda.
- I. Binary Value: An intermediate (software) point that may be editable or read-only. Editable BVs are typically used to allow the user to set a fixed control parameter, such as a setpoint. Read Only BVs are typically used to display the status of a control operation.
- J. Building Controllers (BCs): A fully programmable control module which is capable of storing trends and schedules, serving as a router to devices on a subnet, and initiating read and write requests to other controllers. Typically this controller is located on the Ethernet/IP backbone of the BAS. In many vendors' architectures a Building Controller will serve as a master controller, storing schedules and trends for controllers on a subnet underneath the Building Controller.
- K. Control Systems Server: A computer(s) that maintain(s) the systems configuration and programming database.
- L. Controller: Intelligent stand-alone control device. Controller is a generic reference to building controllers, custom application controllers, and application specific controllers.

- M. Direct Digital Control: Microprocessor-based control including Analog/Digital conversion and program logic.
- N. Furnished or Provided: The act of supplying a device or piece of equipment as required meeting the scope of work specified and making that device or equipment operational. All costs required to furnish the specified device or equipment and make it operational are borne by the division specified to be responsible for providing the device or equipment.
- O. Gateway: Bi-directional protocol translator connecting control systems that use different communication protocols.
- P. Install or Installed: The physical act of mounting, piping or wiring a device or piece of equipment in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the scope of work as specified. All costs required to complete the installation are borne by the division specified to include labor and any ancillary materials.
- Q. Integrate: The physical connections from a control system to all specified equipment through an interface as required to allow the specified control and monitoring functions of the equipment to be performed via the control system.
- R. Interface: The physical device required to provide integration capabilities from an equipment vendor's product to the control system. The equipment vendor most normally furnishes the interface device. An example of an interface is the chilled water temperature reset interface card provided by the chiller manufacturer in order to allow the control system to integrate the chilled water temperature reset function into the control system.
- S. Local Area Network: Computer or control system communications network limited to local building or campus.
- T. Loop or control loop: Most commonly a PID control loop. Typically a control loop will include a setpoint, an input which is compared to the setpoint, and an output which controls some action based upon the difference between the input and the setpoint. A PID control loop will also include gains for the proportional, integral, and derivative response as well as an interval which controls how frequently the control loop updates its output. These gains may be adjustable by the end user for control loop "tuning," but in self-tuning control loops or loops which have been optimized for a specific application the gains may not be adjustable.
- U. Master-Slave/Token Passing (MS/TP): Data link protocol as defined by the BACnet standard.
- V. Point-to-Point: Serial communication as defined in the BACnet standard.
- W. Primary Controlling LAN: High speed, peer-to-peer controller LAN connecting BCs and optionally AACs and ASCs. Refer to System Architecture below.
- X. Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS): A written document that identifies the particular options specified by BACnet that are implemented in a device.
- Y. Router: A device that connects two or more networks at the network layer.
- Z. Schedule: The control algorithm for this equipment shall include a user editable schedule.

- AA. Trend: The control system shall be configured to collect and display a trend log of this object. The trending interval shall be no less than one sample every 5 minutes. (Change of Value trending, where a sample is taken every time the value changes by more than a user-defined minimum, is an acceptable alternative.)
- BB. Wiring: Raceway, fittings, wire, boxes and related items.

# 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer and Manufacturer Qualifications
  - 1. Installer shall have an established working relationship with the Control System Manufacturer and have, as a minimum, 5 years demonstrated experience with installation and support of the manufacturer's product
  - 2. Installer shall have successfully completed Control System Manufacturer's control system training. Upon request, Installer shall present record of completed training including course outlines.
  - 3. Installer shall be a Factory owned Branch office of the Control System manufacturer.

## 1.5 CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. Work, materials, and equipment shall comply with the most restrictive of local, state, and federal authorities' codes and ordinances for these plans and specifications. As a minimum, the installation shall comply with current editions in effect 30 days prior to receipt of bids of the following codes:
  - 1. National Electric Code (NEC)
  - 2. International Building Code (IBC)
  - 3. International Mechanical Code (IMC)
  - 4. Underwriters Laboratories (UL/CUL)
  - 5. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135, BACnet A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Systems.

## 1.6 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

- A. Performance Standards. System shall conform to the following minimum standards over network connections. Systems shall be tested using manufacturer's recommended hardware and software for display through the user's web browser.
  - 1. Graphic Display. A graphic with 20 dynamic points shall display with current data within 10 sec.
  - 2. Graphic Refresh. A graphic with 20 dynamic points shall update with current data within 8 sec. and shall automatically refresh every 15 sec.

- 3. Configuration and Tuning Screens. Screens used for configuring, calibrating, or tuning points, PID loops, and similar control logic shall automatically refresh within 6 sec.
- 4. Object Command. Devices shall react to command of a binary object within 2 sec. Devices shall begin reacting to command of an analog object within 2 sec.
- 5. Alarm Response Time. An object that goes into alarm shall be annunciated at the browser within 45 sec.
- 6. Program Execution Frequency. Custom and standard applications shall be capable of running as often as once every 5 sec.
- 7. Performance. Programmable controllers shall be able to completely execute DDC PID control loops at a frequency adjustable down to once per sec. Select execution times consistent with the mechanical process under control.
- 8. Multiple Alarm Annunciation. Each user, connected to network accessing the system through their browser (workstation), shall receive alarms within 5 seconds of one another.
- 9. Control Stability and Accuracy. Control loops shall maintain measured variable at setpoint within tolerances shown in table below:

Controlled Variable	Control Accuracy	Range of Medium
Air Pressure	±0.2 in. w.g.	0–6 in. w.g.
	(±0.01 in. w.g.	-0.1 to 0.1 in. w.g.
Airflow	$\pm 10\%$ of full scale	
Space Temperature	±2.0°F	
Duct Temperature	±2.0°F	
Humidity	±5% RH	
Fluid Pressure	±1.5 psi	1–150 psi
	±1.0 in. w.g	0–50 in. w.g. differential

# 1.7 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data and Shop Drawings: The contractor shall provide shop drawings and product data on hardware, software, and equipment to be installed or provided. No work may begin on any segment of this project until submittals have been approved for conformity with design intent. Provide submittal data in a digital format on suitable digital media such as a USB drive. The submittal data shall be in standard Microsoft (Word, Excel, etc.) or PDF file formats. The shop drawings shall be formatted to fit on 11" x 17" pages and hardware/software product data shall be formatted to fit on 8.5" x 11" pages. When manufacturer's cutsheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product, the data specifically applicable to the project shall be highlighted or clearly indicated by other means. Each submitted piece of literature and drawing shall clearly reference the specification and/or drawing that the submittal is to cover. General catalogs shall not be accepted as cutsheets to fulfill submittal requirements. Select and show

submittal quantities appropriate to scope of work. Submittal approval does not relieve Contractor of responsibility to supply sufficient quantities to complete work. Submittals shall be provided within 12 weeks of contract award. Submittals shall include:

- 1. DDC System Hardware
  - a. A complete bill of materials to be used indicating quantity, manufacturer, model number, and relevant technical data of equipment to be used.
  - b. Manufacturer's description and technical data such as performance curves, product specifications, and installation and maintenance instructions for items listed below and for relevant items not listed below:
    - 1) Direct digital controllers (controller panels)
    - 2) Transducers and transmitters
    - 3) Sensors (including accuracy data)
    - 4) Actuators
    - 5) Valves
    - 6) Relays and switches
    - 7) Control panels
    - 8) Power supplies
    - 9) Batteries
    - 10) Operator interface equipment
    - 11) Wiring
  - c. Wiring diagrams and layouts for each control panel. Show termination numbers.
  - d. Schematic diagrams for all field sensors and controllers. Provide floor plans of all sensor locations and control hardware. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, and wire types.
- 2. Central System Hardware and Software
  - a. A complete bill of material of equipment used indicating quantity, manufacturer, model number, and relevant technical.
  - b. Manufacturer's description and technical data such as product specifications and installation and maintenance instructions for items listed below and for relevant items furnished under this contract not listed below:
    - 1) Central Processing Unit (CPU) or web server

- 2) Monitors
- 3) Keyboards
- 4) Power supplies
- 5) Battery backups
- 6) Interface equipment between CPU or server and control panels
- 7) Operating System software web server
- 8) Color graphic software
- 9) Third-party software
- c. Schematic diagrams for all control, communication, and power wiring. Provide a schematic drawing of the central system installation. Label all cables and ports with computer manufacturers' model numbers and functions. Show interface wiring to control system.
- d. Network riser diagrams of wiring between central control unit and control panels.
- 3. Controlled Systems
  - a. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, and wire types.
  - b. A schematic diagram of each controlled system. The schematics shall have all control points labeled with point names shown or listed. The schematics shall graphically show the location of all control elements in the system.
  - c. A schematic wiring diagram of each controlled system. Label control elements and terminals. Where a control element is also shown on control system schematic, use the same name.
  - d. An instrumentation list (Bill of Materials) for each controlled system. List each control system element in a table. Show element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data sheet number.
  - e. A mounting, wiring, and routing plan-view drawing. The design shall take into account HVAC, electrical and other systems' design and elevation requirements. The drawing shall show the specific location of all concrete pads and bases and any special wall bracing for panels to accommodate this work.
  - f. A complete description of the operation of the control system, including sequences of operation. The description shall include and reference a schematic diagram of the controlled system.
  - g. A point list for each control system. List I/O points and software points required to provide specified sequence of operations. Indicate alarmed and trended points.

- 4. Quantities of items submitted shall be reviewed but are the responsibility of the Contractor
- 5. BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) for each submitted type of controller and operator interface.
- B. Project Documentation
  - 1. Upon completion of installation, submit record (as-built) documents for approval before final completion. Provide record documents in a digital format on suitable digital media such as a USB drive. The record documents shall be in standard Microsoft (Word, Excel, etc.) or PDF file formats except as noted below. Record documentation shall include the following:
    - a. Project Record Drawings.
    - b. Testing and Commissioning Reports and Checklists.
    - c. Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Manual.
    - d. As-built versions of submittal product data.
    - e. Names, addresses, and telephone numbers of installing contractors and service representatives for equipment and control systems.
    - f. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems: logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control, and changing setpoints and variables.
    - g. Programming manual or set of manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
    - h. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manual or set of manuals that explains how to design and install new points, panels, and other hardware; how to perform preventive maintenance and calibration; how to debug hardware problems; and how to repair or replace hardware.
    - i. Documentation of programs operating in the system and object database that can be viewed using technician software tools furnished with system.
    - j. Graphic files, programs, and database to be viewed using technician software tools furnished with system.
    - k. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
    - 1. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
    - m. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation or web server software, and graphics software.
    - n. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents for equipment and systems.
    - o. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
  - 2. Load into the control system for access by the operator through any operator workstation closeout documentation. There shall be a menu or navigation tab to access the documentation. The documentation can be loaded into the control system in a pdf format. The following documentation shall be included:

- a. As-built control diagrams including wiring diagrams and sequences of operations for each controller/piece of equipment.
- b. All IOM data as follows:
  - 1) IOM from each equipment manufacturer for each piece of equipment (AHUs, FCUs, Chillers, pumps etc.)
  - 2) IOM for each control module and end device installed in the system.
- C. Training Materials: Provide course outline and materials for each class at least six weeks before first class. Training shall be furnished via instructor-led sessions, computer-based training, or web-based training. Engineer will modify course outlines and materials if necessary to meet Owner's needs. Engineer will review and approve course outlines and materials at least three weeks before first class.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Warrant work as follows:
  - Warrant labor and materials for specified control system free from defects for a period of 12 months after final acceptance. Control system failures during warranty period shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost or reduction in service to Owner. Respond during normal business hours within 24 hours of Owner's warranty service request.
  - 2. Work shall have a single warranty date, even if Owner receives beneficial use due to early system start-up. If specified work is split into multiple contracts or a multi-phase contract, each contract or phase shall have a separate warranty start date and period.
  - 3. If the engineer determines that equipment and systems operate satisfactorily at the end of final start-up, testing, and commissioning phase, the engineer will certify in writing that control system operation has been tested and accepted in accordance with the terms of this specification. Date of acceptance shall begin warranty period.
  - 4. All Manufacturer's software/firmware for web server/workstation and controllers shall be updated to the latest versions that are available from the manufacturer within 30 days from the date of end of the warranty. These updates shall be installed and checked out before the end of the warranty.
  - 5. Provide updates to web server software, project-specific software, graphic software, database software, and firmware that resolve the contractor-identified software deficiencies at no charge during warranty period. If available, Owner can purchase inwarranty service agreement to receive upgrades for functional enhancements associated with above-mentioned items. Do not install updates or upgrades without Owner's written authorization.
  - 6. Exception: Contractor shall not be required to warrant reused devices except those that have been rebuilt or repaired and factory recertified. Installation labor and materials shall be warranted. Demonstrate operable condition of reused devices at time of Engineer's acceptance.

### 1.9 OWNERSHIP OF PROPRIETARY MATERIAL

- A. Project-specific software and documentation shall become Owner's property. This includes, but is not limited to:
  - 1. Graphics
  - 2. Record drawings
  - 3. Database
  - 4. Application programming code
  - 5. Documentation

## 1.10 PRODUCTS FURNISHED BY OTHERS AND INTEGRATED INTO BMS:

- A. General: The BMS shall be capable of integrating to any third party equipment using the following standard open protocols:
  - 1. BACnet (IP, SC, Arcnet, or MS/TP)
  - 2. Modbus (RTU or IP)
- B. The third party equipment provider shall provide the details of the proposed interface including PICS for BACnet equipment, hardware and software identifiers for the interface points, network identifiers, wiring requirements, communication speeds, and required network accessories.
- C. The third party equipment provider is responsible for furnishing and installing their interface pre-programmed and configured with the correct parameters to integrate with the BMS. These parameters include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Communication protocol
  - 2. Correct communication protocol baud rate
  - 3. Points required to be viewed through the BMS. This includes ensuring the points are "in service" and visible to the BMS.
  - 4. Addressing of controller/interface. The BMS provider shall furnish the address.
- D. The third party equipment manufacturer shall include a minimum of 16 hours of onsite technical support for integration into the BMS.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MATERIALS

A. Use new products the manufacturer is currently manufacturing and selling for use in new installations. Do not use this installation as a product test site unless explicitly approved in writing by Owner. Spare parts shall be available for at least five years after completion of this contract.

## 2.2 COMMUNICATION

- A. Control products, communication media, connectors, repeaters, hubs, and routers shall comprise a BACnet internetwork. Controller and operator interface communication shall conform to ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135, BACnet.
- B. All IP based controllers shall be capable of providing IPv4 or IPv6 protocol standards as defined by the Internet Data Communications Standard.
- C. The BMS contractor shall provide all communication media, connectors, repeaters and network switches/routers, and network devices necessary to provide a complete and workable control network.
- D. Each controller shall have a communication port for temporary connection to a laptop computer or other operator interface. Connection shall support memory downloads and other commissioning and troubleshooting operations.
- E. Internetwork operator interface and value passing shall be transparent to internetwork architecture.
  - 1. An operator interface connected to a controller shall allow the operator to interface with each internetwork controller as if directly connected. Controller information such as data, status, and control algorithms shall be viewable and editable from each internetwork controller.
  - 2. Inputs, outputs, and control variables used to integrate control strategies across multiple controllers shall be readable by each controller on the internetwork. Program and test all cross-controller links required to execute specified sequences of operations. An authorized operator shall be able to edit cross-controller links by typing a standard object address or by using a point-and-click interface.
- F. BACnet Secure Connect(BACnet/SC). BACnet/SC is a datalink option that makes the full use of TLS WebSocket connections as defined by addendum bj to the ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135.
  - 1. The BMS contractor shall furnish and install a network designed to allow for implementation of BACnet/SC. The network shall be installed with as many devices capable of using BACnet/SC at time of installation.
  - 2. The BMS contractor shall furnish and install all BACnet workstations/servers, routers, and building controllers capable of using BACnet/SC. Any BACnet workstations/servers, routers, or building controllers that do not have BACnet/SC capability at time of installation shall have the ability to provide BACnet/SC capability with a software/firmware update/patch. BACnet/SC capability shall not require the physical replacement of the BACnet workstation/server, router, or building controller hardware.
- G. Building Control Panels and Controllers with real-time clocks shall use the BACnet Time Synchronization service. System shall automatically synchronize system clocks daily from an operator-designated device via the internetwork. The system shall automatically adjust for daylight saving and standard time as applicable.

- H. System shall be expandable to at least twice the required BACnet objects. No additional licensing/software fees shall be required to add controllers, associated devices, and wiring.
- I. System shall support Web services data exchange with any other system that complies with XML (extensible markup language) and SOAP (simple object access protocol) standards. Web services support shall as a minimum be provided at the workstation or web server level and shall enable data to be read from or written to the system.
  - 1. System shall support Web services read data requests by retrieving requested trend data or point values (I/O hardware points, analog value software points, or binary value software points) from any system controller or from the trend history database.
  - 2. System shall support Web services write data request to each analog and binary object that can be edited through the system operator interface by downloading a numeric value to the specified object.
  - 3. For read or write requests, the system shall require user name and password authentication and shall support TLS (Transport Layer Security) or equivalent data encryption.
  - 4. System shall support discovery through a Web services connection or shall provide a tool available through the Operator Interface that will reveal the path/identifier needed to allow a third party Web services device to read data from or write data to any object in the system which supports this service.

# 2.3 OPERATOR INTERFACE

- A. Operator Interface. The web server shall reside on a high-speed network with the building controllers. Web pages generated by this server shall be compatible with the latest versions of Microsoft Internet Explorer or Edge, Google Chrome, Mozilla Firefox, and Apple Safari browsers. Any of these supported browsers connected to the server shall be able to access all system information. Mobile devices shall be recognized by the web server and shall supply the appropriate system content as needed. The Operator Interface (web server with client devices) shall conform to the BACnet Operator Workstation (B-OWS) or BACnet Advanced Workstation (B-AWS) device profile as specified in ASHRAE/ANSI 135 BACnet Annex L. This includes the ability to configure and/or reconfigure the system from the client device (change programs, graphics, labels, etc.).
- B. Communication. Web server and controllers shall communicate using the BACnet protocol. Web server and control network backbone shall communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) Data Link/Physical layer protocol and BACnet/IP addressing as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex J. Communication between the web server and client (workstation) shall be HTTP or HTTPS protocol utilizing HTML5 language. Use of Adobe Flash in any part of the communication infrastructure is not acceptable.
- C. Hardware.
  - 1. Web server and/or workstation. Industry-standard hardware shall meet or exceed DDC system manufacturer's recommended specifications and shall meet response times specified elsewhere in this document. The web server may also be configured in client/server fashion to accommodate a "workstation" definition. In "workstation"

configuration, the workstation will also perform as a server supplying additional clients as needed. The following hardware requirements apply:

- a. System storage shall have sufficient memory to accommodate:
  - 1) All required system software.
  - 2) A DDC database to accommodate, as a minimum, twice the size of the delivered system database.
  - 3) Two years of archival trend data based on the points specified to be trended at their specified trend intervals.
- b. Provide additional hardware (communication ports, video drivers, network interface cards, cabling, etc.) to facilitate all control functions and software requirements specified for the DDC system.
- c. Minimum hardware configuration shall include the following:
  - 1) Quad Core Processor
  - 2) 4-24 GB RAM (size dependent on size of system)
  - 3) 500 GB hard disk providing data at 3.0 Gb/sec (size dependent on historical data storage requirements)
  - 4) 16x DVD+/-RW drive
  - 5) Qwerty Keyboard
  - 6) Optical Mouse
  - 7) 24-inch LED Color monitor with 75Hz refresh rate and 1080P resolution to provide a minimum screen resolution of 1920 x 1080 pixels.
  - 8) Serial (USB) and network communication ports, with cables as required for proper DDC system operation
- D. System Software.
  - 1. Operating System. Web server shall have an industry-standard professional-grade operating system. Operating system shall meet or exceed the BMS manufacturer's minimum requirements to support their software. Acceptable systems include Microsoft Windows 8.1 or 10, Windows Server 2012 R2 or 2016 or 2019 or 2020, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.3, or Ubuntu Desktop 18.04 or 20.04 TLS.
  - 2. Security. The web server application shall support Transport Layer Security (TLS) 1.3 capable of encryption of up to 256 bit elliptical curve for transmitting private information over the Internet using HTTPS. Additionally, the web server shall have SHA-2 certificate support capability.

- 3. Database. System shall support any JDBC (Java DataBase Connectivity) compliant engine. This includes: MS SQL, My SQL, Apache Derby, PostgreSQL and Oracle.
- 4. The BMS system shall allow an unlimited number of concurrent users.
- 5. The BMS manufacturer shall provide all software and tools necessary to provide the following capabilities:
  - a. Create and/or edit any programming used in controllers
  - b. Create and/or edit any graphics used in the system
  - c. Software shall not be subscription based and be given to owner at time of turnover. If software is subscription based, manufacturer shall include 10 years of subscription service.
  - d. The owner shall have the ability to install software on a minimum of five (5) additional owner furnished computers without additional licenses or fees.
- 2. System Graphics. The operator interface software shall be graphically based and shall include at least one graphic per piece of equipment or occupied zone, graphics for each chilled water and hot water system, and graphics that summarize conditions on each floor of each building included in this contract. Indicate thermal comfort on floor plan summary graphics using dynamic colors to represent zone temperature relative to zone setpoint.
  - a. Minimum graphics resolution shall be 1920 x1080 for display of detailed system graphics.
  - b. Floor Plan Graphics. Floor plan graphics shall be capable of allowing the floor plan graphic to dynamically size relative to the end user's monitor resolution.
  - c. Functionality. Graphics shall allow operator to monitor system status, to view a summary of the most important data for each controlled zone or piece of equipment, to use point-and-click navigation between zones or equipment, and to edit setpoints and other specified parameters.
  - d. Animation. Graphics shall be able to animate by displaying different image files for changed object status.
  - e. Alarm Indication. Indicate areas or equipment in an alarm condition using color or other visual indicator.
  - f. Format. Graphics shall be saved in an industry-standard format such as BMP, JPEG, PNG, GIF, or SVG. Web-based system graphics shall be viewable on browsers compatible with World Wide Web Consortium browser standards. Web graphic format shall require no plug-in) or shall only require widely available no-cost plug-ins (such as Active-X or Adobe Flash).
- 6. Custom Graphics. Custom graphic files shall be created with the use of a graphics generation package furnished with the BMS system. The graphics generation package shall be a graphically based system to create and modify graphics that are saved in the same formats as are used for system graphics.

- 7. Graphics Library. Furnish a complete library of standard HVAC equipment graphics such as chillers, boilers, air handlers, terminals, fan coils, and unit ventilators. This library also shall include standard symbols for other equipment including fans, pumps, coils, valves, piping, dampers, and ductwork. The library shall be furnished in a file format compatible with the graphics generation package program.
- E. System Applications. System shall provide the following functionality to authorized operators as an integral part of the operator interface or as stand-alone software programs. If furnished as part of the interface, the tool shall be available from each workstation or web browser interface. If furnished as a stand-alone program, software shall be installable on standard PC type personal computer with no limit on the number of copies that can be installed under the system license.
  - 1. Automatic System Database Configuration. Each workstation or web server shall store on its hard disk a copy of the current system database, including controller firmware and software. Stored database shall be automatically updated with each system configuration or controller firmware or software change.
  - 2. Manual Controller Memory Download. Operators shall be able to download memory from the system database to each controller.
  - 3. System Configuration. The workstation software shall provide a method of configuring the system. This shall allow for future system changes or additions by users under proper password.
  - 4. On-Line Help. Provide a context-sensitive, on-line help system to assist the operator in operating and editing the system. On-line help shall be available for all applications and shall provide the relevant data for that particular screen. Additional help information shall be available through the use of hypertext.
  - 5. Video Training. Provide on-line video support to supplement on-line help assistance. Video content shall be relevant and support existing system documentation.
  - 6. Security. Each operator shall be required to log on to the system with a user name and password in order to view, edit, add, or delete data.
    - a. Operator Access. The user name and password combination shall define accessible viewing, editing, adding, and deleting privileges for that operator. Users with system administrator rights shall be able to create new users and edit the privileges of all existing users. System Administrators shall also be able to vary and deny each operator's privileges based on the geographic location, such as the ability to edit operating parameters in Building A, to view but not edit parameters in Building B, and to not even see equipment in Building C.
    - b. Password Policy Rules. System administrator shall invoke policies for minimum password strength, including number of characters, special characters and numbers, upper and lower case, etc.
    - c. Automatic Log Out. Automatically log out each operator if no keyboard or mouse activity is detected. This auto logoff time shall be user adjustable.

- d. Encrypted Security Data. Store system security data including operator passwords in an encrypted format. System shall not display operator passwords.
- 7. System Diagnostics. The system shall automatically monitor the operation of all building management panels and controllers. The failure of any device shall be annunciated to the operator
- 8. Alarm Processing. System input and status objects shall be configurable to alarm on departing from and on returning to normal state. Operator shall be able to enable or disable each alarm and to configure alarm limits, alarm limit differentials, alarm states, and alarm reactions for each system object. Configure and enable alarm points as required by sequences of operation. Alarms shall be BACnet alarm objects and shall use BACnet alarm services. BMS system shall be capable of assigning alarm sources to categories such as HVAC Critical, or HVAC General. The BMS shall include at a minimum HVAC and FDD categories. BMS system shall allow user to create custom alarm categories.
- 9. Alarm Messages. Alarm messages shall use the English language descriptor for the object in alarm in such a way that the operator will be able to recognize the source, location, and nature of the alarm without relying on acronyms or mnemonics.
- 10. Alarm Reactions. Operator shall be able to configure (by object) what, if any actions are to be taken during an alarm. As a minimum, the workstation or web server shall be able to log, print, start programs, display messages, send e-mail, send SMS text, and audibly annunciate.
- 11. Alarm and Event log. Operators shall be able to view all system alarms and changes of state from any location in the system. Events shall be listed chronologically. An operator with the proper security level may acknowledge and delete alarms, and archive closed alarms to the workstation or web server hard.
- 12. Trend Logs. The operator shall be able to configure trend sample or change of value (COV) interval, start time, and stop time for each system data object and shall be able to retrieve data for use in spreadsheets and standard database programs. Controller shall sample and store trend data and shall be able to archive data to the hard disk. Configure trends as required by the sequences of operations. Trends shall be BACnet trend objects. As a minimum, all physical points in the system shall be trended within the local controller (AAC, ASC, BC) for at least 277 samples per point. Selected points, as desired, shall be available for historical archiving within the server. The historical archiving capability cannot be less than 2 years.
- 13. Object and Property Status and Control. Provide a method for the operator to view, and edit if applicable, the status of any object or property in the system. The status shall be available by menu, on graphics, or through custom programs.
- 14. Reports and Logs. Operator shall be able to select, to modify, to create, and to print reports and logs. Operator shall be able to store report data in a format accessible by standard spreadsheet and word processing programs.
- 15. Audit and Security Detail. All users accessing the system shall have their actions recorded. Information recorded shall include:
- a. login/logout time and date
- b. system modifications with before and after values;
- c. ability to report user activity based on individual and/or date and time.
- 16. Standard Reports. Furnish the following standard system reports:
  - a. Objects. System objects and current values filtered by object type, by status (in alarm, locked, normal), by equipment, by geographic location, or by combination of filter criteria.
  - b. Alarm Summary. Current alarms and closed alarms. System shall retain closed alarms for an adjustable period.
  - c. Logs. System shall log the following to a database or text file and shall retain data for an adjustable period:
    - 1) Alarm History.
    - 2) Trend Data. Operator shall be able to select trends to be logged.
- 17. Custom Reports. Operator shall be able to create custom reports that retrieve data, including archived trend data, from the system, that analyze data using common algebraic calculations, and that present results in tabular or graphical format. Reports shall be launched from the operator interface. Operator shall be able to schedule reports to automatically run and be emailed to recipients on a recurring basis from the BMS system.
- 18. Logic Page. System shall allow operator to view all application software in real time for all controllers furnished and installed by BMS manufacturer.
- 19. Environmental Index. System shall monitor all occupied zones and compile an index that provides a numerical indication of the environmental comfort within the zone. As a minimum, this indication shall be based upon the deviation of the zone temperature from the heating or cooling setpoint. If humidity is being measured within the zone then the environmental index shall be adjusted to reflect a lower comfort level for high or low humidity levels. Similarly, if carbon dioxide levels are being measured as an indication of ventilation effectiveness then the environmental index shall be adjusted to indicate degraded comfort at high carbon dioxide levels. Other adjustments may be made to the environmental index based upon additional measurements. The system shall maintain a trend of the environmental index for each zone in the trend log. The system shall also compute an average comfort index for every building included in this contract and maintain trend logs of these building environmental indices. Similarly, the system shall compute the percentage of occupied time that comfortable conditions were maintained within the zones. Through the UI the user shall be able to add a weighting factor to adjust the contribution of each zone to the average index based upon the floor area of the zone, importance of the zone, or other static criteria.
- 20. Indoor Environmental Quality Index (IEQ)
  - a. System shall monitor up to ten building conditions and compile an index that provides a numerical indication of the overall building environmental quality and health. A graphical dashboard indicating each measured building condition name, a description of each measured building condition, the current value of each

measured building condition, and the overall building IEQ value. In addition, an historical trend graph of the IEQ Index and/or individual health components shall also be displayed The IEQ numerical value indication shall be 0-100 with 0 being the worst and 100 the best. The IEQ shall be calculated using an algorithm that aggregates all of the selected building conditions and allows the user to define the acceptable ranges for each monitored building condition. In addition, the user shall have the ability assign a weighting/importance factor to each building condition that determines the impact the monitored building condition has on the overall IEQ index calculation. The IEQ value graphical representation shall have the ability to display one of a minimum of four (4) colors based on the IEQ value and the user adjustable range for each color. The default IEQ ranges and colors shall be as follows:

- 1) Less than 85 = Red
- 2) 85 to 89.9 = Orange
- 3) 90 to 94.9 = Yellow
- 4) 95 to 100 = Green
- b. The system shall allow the user to select from one of the following ten building conditions:
  - 1) Temperature, average area
  - 2) Humidity, average area
  - 3) Carbon Dioxide, average area
  - 4) Volatile Organic Compounds, average area
  - 5) % Dirty Filters, % dirty filter switches
  - 6) % Occupied, of expected occupants
  - 7) Air Purifiers, Total counted purifiers
  - 8) % OA of Design, % Total OA cfm of buildings design.
  - 9) CFM per Person, Average outside air flow per occupant
  - 10) % Time Above minimum, % of time outside air dampers are above the minimum when occupied (average of all).
- 21. Time Lapse Graphic Replay. Operator shall be able to "replay" any graphic in the system to see how key values changed over an operator-selected period of time. Operator shall be able to select the starting date/time for this display and the end date/time or the display period. System shall then display the graphic as it would have looked at the beginning of that period, displaying key data, dynamic colors, etc. based upon values recorded at the start time. When the operator starts the replay the graphics and key values shall dynamically change to produce the effect of "fast forwarding" through the designated period of time. Once the system has been operational for at least 30 days, the contractor shall demonstrate that up to 24 hours of data from within the last 30 days can be replayed on any graphic page. Owner's representative shall choose the graphic pages for this demonstration at the time of the demonstration.
- 22. Semantic Tagging. The BMS system shall include a semantic tagging engine that uses the Project Haystack library of descriptive tagging for building equipment and systems used in the BMS. The Project Haystack naming tags used by the BMS shall be a library that includes a comprehensive list of standard tag names to address common equipment, building systems, and device types. The library tag of names shall include at a minimum the tag names listed in ASHRAE Standard 223P.

- 23. Network Health Monitoring.
  - a. The BAS shall allow for monitoring of the network system health through the use of a remote cloud based analytics platform. The BAS vendor shall provide to the owner a baseline report of the building network health at project completion and then once again at the end of the warranty period.. The health monitoring application provides insights into the health of the BAS system for system maintenance and usage. This application will provide at a minimum the following information for the following BAS network:
    - 1) BAS Server
      - a) Online status/availability
      - b) CPU and memory usage
      - c) JAVA Container Health: Memory usage patterns and allocation to overall server resources
    - 2) BACnet Controllers
      - a) Memory usage: Controller flash and database utilization
      - b) Critical errors: Controller and watchdog errors
      - c) Network communications health: Transmit and receive patterns and identification of controllers that may be causing errors
    - 3) Network System Inventory
      - a) BAS Server software version
      - b) Controller driver versions
      - c) Controller upgrade requirements
  - b. At the completion of the warranty period, the owner shall have the option of continuing the remote network health monitoring service as part of an ongoing service contract negotiated with the BAS provider for an additional fee.
- 24. VAV Auto-Commissioning. The BMS system shall provide an auto-commissioning tool to commission single duct, dual duct, parallel and series flow fan powered VAV terminal units with or without hot water reheat.
  - a. This tool shall be available for use during the construction phase of the project.
  - b. The auto-commissioning tool shall run a set of functional tests to automatically exercise dampers and reheat valves in the VAV system.
  - c. The user shall be able to schedule when the functional testing of a VAV system is to be done.
  - d. The auto-commissioning tool shall be capable of detecting the following faults:
    - 1) Obstruction
    - 2) Over-Stroking
    - 3) Under Stroking
    - 4) Leakage
    - 5) Stuck

- 6) Sensor Issue
- 7) Reverse Stroking
- 8) AHU Pressure Error
- 9) Data Inconsistent
- 10) Actuation Range Insufficient
- 11) Data Insufficient
- 12) Data Unavailable
- 13) Expert Diagnosis Required
- 14) Maximum Airflow Error
- 15) Minimum Airflow Error
- e. The tool shall be capable of exporting an excel file or printing a file in PDF format that provides a detailed report.
- f. A baseline commissioning report shall be provided for all VAV systems at the completion of the project.
- 25. Weather Data. The BMS system shall retrieve current weather conditions from a data source such as AccuWeather. This weather information shall be displayed on a graphic page and be capable for use in control logic.
- 26. Hourly weather forecast (add-on). The BMS system shall retrieve and monitor hourly weather forecasts allowing the building automation system to execute intelligent control strategies based on hourly weather forecast data for the next five days. These predictive control strategies can help building operators maximize occupant comfort, energy efficiency indoors, while also optimizing the use of water in irrigation systems outdoors
- 27. The Door Status Integration 17-01 (add-on). BMS shall integrate to Winpak with API v4.7 or higher to monitor and respond to door-related events by creating points that can be viewed on a graphic. System shall pull in the door status points and display colored buttons to represent and indicate status. Operator shall also be able to set up automatic log of door activities.
- 28. LDAP/AD (add-on). The BMS shall be provided with authentication provider that allows the user to log in to the WebCTRL® system using LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) or AD (Active Directory®) credentials.
- 29. Open ADR (add-on). Open Automated Demand Response interface shall be provided that allows electricity providers to communicate DR signals directly to the BMS. Software shall fully support the OpenADR 2.0a and 2.0b and does not require any additional specialized hardware.
- 30. BACnet Scheduling Interface (add-on). The BMS system shall allow third-party devices to read and write schedules via the BACnet protocol. These exposed schedules to third-party BACnet devices are used to control when mechanical equipment runs. Resolves schedule issues with products like SchoolDude® Operations Management Software.
- 31. EMS Scheduling (add-on). EMS Software is a resource and space management platform used by higher education and large corporations. The BMS shall integrate into the EMS Software platform (v44.1 Update 25 or later) by retrieving EMS room bookings at configured times and writing OVERRIDE schedules based on those bookings.
- 32. MS Exchange Scheduling (add-on). The BMS shall integrate with MS Outlook® room reservations to change the BMS schedule to occupied when the space is reserved. This

approach saves energy by ensuring equipment runs only when occupants are in the building space.

- 33. Trend Export (add-on). The BMS shall allow user to specify, manage, and export trend source data to a .CSV file. User can export the files on-demand at any time or at scheduled intervals allowing user to process or analyze trend data outside of the building automation system. Up to two years of trend data can be exported.
- 34. HVAC Schedule Optimization (add-on) The BMS shall gather information from a Lenel® OnGuard® badge reader data system to track historical occupancy trend and then predict future facility occupancy levels. The system then shall automatically adjust zone and building schedules, optimizing energy usage and operational efficiency. System shall analyzes each day type separately to account for daily differences, e.g. Monday vs Friday departures. The OnGuard version 7.0 or later if using DataConduIT interface or version 7.4 or later if using OpenAccess interface.
- 35. Integrated Alarm Management (add-on). The BMS shall enable bi-directional exchange of a configurable set of alarms between the OnGuard and BMS systems platforms in their native UIs. Facility staff and security staff can monitor each other's alarms so that either team can dispatch appropriate personnel regardless of who is currently on shift. Specified alarms can interact with the BMS system equipment and initiate on-demand ventilation for real time response. The OnGuard version 7.0 or later if using DataConduIT interface or version 7.4 or later if using OpenAccess interface.
- 36. OnGuard Data Connector (add-on). The BMS shall be able to connect and define occupancy zones that map OnGuard badge readers to the system.
- 37. Virtual Integration. The BMS system shall provide a virtual integration platform capable of integrating simultaneous IP based BACnet, Modbus, and SNMP data points into the BMS system. The integration platform shall be capable of supporting up a minimum of two(2) times the number of points integrated into the BMS at the completion of the project.
- 38. Chilled Water System Optimizer. The BMS system shall include software to minimize energy of the entire chilled water system and air handling units by providing optimized control of the chilled water and condenser water setpoints while maintaining occupant comfort level. Operator shall be capable of enabling and disabling chilled water optimization.
- 39. Chiller Plant Controller (CPC). BMS shall provide a chiller plant as follows:
  - a. Description: Chiller Plant Controller (CPC)
    - 1) The microprocessor-based chiller plant controller (CPC) shall be provided with a library of factory designed and tested algorithms to supervise and improve the operational efficiency of the individual Product Integrated Controllers (PIC) for each chiller. The chillers may be centrifugal, screw, scroll or reciprocating types. All application software actually performing the required control functions shall be pre-tested and pre-configured.
    - 2) The networked chiller Product Integrated Controllers (PICs) shall interface with a CPC running chiller plant manager software (CPM) installed on the network. The CPC shall allow dynamic interaction between the supervisory software, towers, pumps, and the chiller PIC(s) to create a complete chilled water plant system as described within this specification.
    - 3) The CPC shall include inherent input and output capability. The input/output capability shall include as a minimum a combination of standard HVAC sensor inputs (5k, 10k, 4-20mA and discrete) and analog and digital outputs to control any ancillary equipment necessary to meet the sequence of operation.
    - 4) The CPC shall not interfere with the Chiller PIC's stand-alone operating or safety algorithms but shall enhance the operation by providing the following

inherent capabilities as a minimum. Control of up to eight chillers (staged or rotary) of equal or unequal sizes. Multiple CPM programs may be staged together to provide control of additional chillers.

- 5) The CPC shall contain factory-programmed software for the following types of mechanical systems:
  - a) Two to eight chillers with dedicated chilled water pumps and no secondary piping.
  - b) Two to eight chillers with chilled water pumps in parallel arrangement and no secondary piping.
  - c) Two to eight chillers with dedicated primary (production loop) pumps and secondary (distribution loop) VFD pumps piped in a parallel arrangement.
  - d) Two to eight parallel chillers, common primary pumps, constant flow (common constant speed secondary pumps), variable flow (two-way valves) with bypass differential pressure control.
  - e) Two to eight parallel chillers, common primary pumps, variable flow (two-way valves), with a differential pressure valve and bypass line.
- b. AAC Attributes
  - 1) The CPC is an Advanced Application Controller (AAC) which shall be powered from standard, off-the-shelf, Class II, 24-volt transformers. UL-916 (PAZX), cUL-916 (PAZX7), CE, FCC Part 15-Subpart B-Class A. The AAC shall conform to BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L and shall be listed as a certified B-AAC in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing. AAC shall reside on a BACnet network using the MS/TP Data Link/Physical layer protocol. Products shall be manufactured in a facility having a Quality System that is registered to either ISO 9002 or ISO 9001 Quality Assurance Standard. The controller shall be designed to be easily mounted in a standard NEMA 1 type enclosure without special rails or mounting hardware and as local and national code dictates.
  - 2) The controller shall include a 365-day real time clock and status diagnostic indicator
  - 3) provided by a seven segment LED.
  - 4) All configuration data will be stored in nonvolatile memory. The controller shall provide a minimum of two days data retention for the time clock.
  - 5) The controller shall include the capability to provide a local interface for all operating values, alarms, etc., via a panel mounted, Local Interface Device. The controller shall also be capable of interfacing to a portable PC for configuring or altering the configuration, setting the address, performing uploads/downloads, etc., through a local interface connector.
- c. Network Compatibility: The PIC local interface and network capabilities shall provide required functions independent of the CPC. The CPC shall support the following network features:
  - 1) Trending
  - 2) BACnet MS/TP Communications
  - 3) BACNet over IP communications
  - 4) Demand Limiting (Load-shed)
  - 5) Alarms
  - 6) Interface to EMS operators station(s)
- d. Network Program Display, Service, and Configuration Screens

- 1) Points Display. The proposed system shall be capable of providing the following information as a minimum, at an EMS operators station, portable PC, or local interface:
  - a) Chiller Manager enable disable point
  - b) Current lead and lag chiller sequence and present chiller status
  - c) Chiller rotation sequence and stage timers
  - d) Outside air sensor value
  - e) Current chilled water supply and return temperatures
  - f) Load Tons
- 2) Properties Screens
  - a) Configuration Data: The proposed system shall provide simple, fill-in the blanks configuration screens. The screens shall include all necessary entries with help prompts available for every entry.
  - b) Maintenance Data: Maintenance data shall be provided to ease the task of troubleshooting. The screens shall have the capability to display all pertinent data necessary to troubleshoot system operation.
- e. Chiller Plant Manager Control Program (CPMCP) Requirements
  - Program Enable/Disable: The CPMCP shall have the ability to be enabled manually by the operator through a point available on the graphic screen, automatically via a network command, automatically via a BACnet schedule or automatically via a schedule/network input combined with OA temperature. The plant shall automatically disable itself if an erroneous entry was made in the configuration, if there are no chillers available to control or if the OA temperature reading is invalid. An alarm shall be generated whenever the program disables itself.
  - 2) Lead/Lag Determination and Rotation: The chiller start sequence shall be operator-selectable from the first chiller through the last chiller. The staging routine has the ability to control based upon the following parameters:
    - a) Chilled Water Temperature ONLY.
    - b) Chilled Water Temperature and/or Load (tonnage)
    - c) Chilled Water Temperature and/or % Capacity
    - d) Chilled Water Temperature and/or % KW
    - e) Advanced load matching (ALM)
  - 3) The CPMCP shall allow the operator to select any of the following Rotation sequences:
    - a) Daily
    - b) Weekly
    - c) Monthly
    - d) Manual Rotation
    - e) Rotation by Runtime
    - f) Never Rotate
- f. CPMCP System Management Requirements: At the system level, the CPMCP shall include the ability to coordinate the operation of all plant room equipment.
  - 1) Operator Override:
    - a) If the CPMCP is operating under a time schedule, the operator shall have the ability to override the unoccupied mode by entering an override schedule through any of the interface devices.
    - b) If the timed override option is initiated during an occupied period, the time schedule shall remain occupied for the duration of the time entered.

- c) If the operator initiates an override during the unoccupied period, the time schedule shall be indexed to occupied for the duration of the value entered.
- 2) Chiller Override: The CPMCP shall include the ability for the operator to remove individual chiller(s) from the sequence and lock the chiller(s) on or off via the user interface.
- 3) OA Temperature Override: The CPMCP shall be capable of monitoring outside air temperature and shall secure the chilled water plant whenever the system has been indexed to the occupied mode and the OAT sensor is below its configured setpoint value.
- 4) Time Schedule Occupied: When the CPMCP time of day reaches the operator adjustable occupancy time the CPM shall be occupied. When the time of day reaches the unoccupied time the CPMCP shall be unoccupied unless one of the above overrides are initiated or the CPM is configured to enable the plant based on a network command.
- g. Chiller Faulting: A chiller shall be considered faulted if a fault status is reported to the CPMCP by the chiller PIC. Chillers having a communication failure (after the operator adjustable start time value has expired) shall be left in their last commanded state. Chillers faulted for any other reason shall be commanded off. All faulted chillers shall be automatically replaced, if applicable, to maintain on-line capacity.
- h. Start/Stop Delay Timers: The CPMCP shall include operator adjustable time delay values to prevent chillers from cycling due to short duration conditions and to allow plant pulldown conditions.
- i. Maximum Demand Limit: A user defined maximum demand limit can be added to each chiller that will be used to prevent it from exceeding a point of maximum operational efficiency. The factor will be sent to the chiller as the % demand limit so as to prevent operation above that point.
- j. Stopping Chillers: When the program status is enabled but the CPMCP has determined that cooling is no longer required, the CPMCP shall command all chillers, including the lead chiller to stop in reverse of the starting order. The CPMCP shall monitor each chiller's status and generate an alarm if a chiller has failed to stop.
- F. Workstation Application Editors. Each PC or browser workstation shall support editing of all system applications. The applications shall be downloaded and executed at one or more of the controller panels
  - 1. Controller. Provide a full-screen editor for each type of application that shall allow the operator to view and change the configuration, name, control parameters, and set points for all controllers.
  - 2. Scheduling. An editor for the scheduling application shall be provided at each workstation. Provide a method of selecting the desired schedule and schedule type. Exception schedules and holidays shall be shown clearly on the calendar. The start and stop times for each object shall be adjustable from this interface.
  - 3. Custom Application Programming. Provide the tools to create, edit, debug, and download custom programs. System shall be fully operable while custom programs are edited, compiled, and downloaded. Programming language shall have the following features:

- a. Language. Language shall be graphically based or English oriented. If graphically based, language shall use function blocks arranged in a logic diagram that clearly shows control logic flow. Function blocks shall directly provide functions listed below, and operators shall be able to create custom or compound function blocks. If English language oriented, language shall be based on the syntax of BASIC, FORTRAN, C, or PASCAL, and shall allow for free-form programming that is not column-oriented or "fill-in-the-blanks."
- b. Programming Environment. Tool shall provide a full-screen, cursor-and-mousedriven programming environment that incorporates word processing features such as cut and paste. Operators shall be able to insert, add, modify, and delete custom programming code, and to copy blocks of code to a file library for reuse in other control programs.
- c. Independent Program Modules. Operator shall be able to develop independently executing program modules that can disable, enable and exchange data with other program modules.
- d. Debugging and Simulation. Operator shall be able to step through the program observing intermediate values and results. Operator shall be able to adjust input variables to simulate actual operating conditions. Operator shall be able to adjust each step's time increment to observe operation of delays, integrators, and other time-sensitive control logic. Debugger shall provide error messages for syntax and for execution errors.
- e. Conditional Statements. Operator shall be able to program conditional logic using compound Boolean (AND, OR, and NOT) and relational (EQUAL, LESS THAN, GREATER THAN, NOT EQUAL) comparisons.
- f. Mathematical Functions. Language shall support floating-point addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, and square root operations, as well as absolute value calculation and programmatic selection of minimum and maximum values from a list of values.
- g. Variables. Operator shall be able to use variable values in program conditional statements and mathematical functions.
  - 1) Time Variables. Operator shall be able to use predefined variables to represent time of day, day of the week, month of the year, and date. Other predefined variables or simple control logic shall provide elapsed time in seconds, minutes, hours, and days. Operator shall be able to start, stop, and reset elapsed time variables using the program language.
  - 2) System Variables. Operator shall be able to use predefined variables to represent status and results of Controller Software and shall be able to enable, disable, and change setpoints of Controller Software as described in Controller Software section.

### 2.4 CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

A. All controller software applications shall reside and operate in the system controllers.

- B. All application software in controllers furnished by BMS manufacturer shall be editable through operator workstation, web browser interface, or workstation.
- C. Each controller furnished by BMS manufacturer shall have all of its local on board software applications backed up and saved to the BMS web server. In the event of a controller failure, the BMS server shall download backed up software applications to replacement controller. Controllers furnished by others and integrated into the BMS are not required to be backed up to BMS server.
- D. Furnish the following applications for building and energy management:
  - 1. System Security.
  - 2. Scheduling. Provide the capability to execute control functions according to a user created or edited schedule. Each schedule shall provide the following schedule options as a minimum:
  - 3. Weekly Schedule. Provide separate schedules for each day of the week. Each schedule shall be able to include up to 5 occupied periods (5 start-stop pairs or 10 events).
  - 4. Exception Schedules. Provide the ability for the operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule has executed, the system shall discard and replace the exception schedule with the standard schedule for that day of the week.
  - 5. Holiday Schedules. Provide the capability for the operator to define up to 24 special or holiday schedules These schedules will be repeated each year. The operator shall be able to define the length of each holiday period. System Coordination. Operator shall be able to group related equipment based on function and location and to use these groups for scheduling and other applications.
  - 6. Binary Alarms. Each binary object shall have the capability to be configured to alarm based on the operator-specified state. Provide the capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.
  - 7. Analog Alarms. Each analog object shall have both high and low alarm limits. The operator shall be able to enable or disable these alarms.
  - 8. Alarm Reporting. The operator shall be able to determine the action to be taken in the event of an alarm. An alarm shall be able to start programs, print, be logged in the event log, generate custom messages, and display on graphics.
  - 9. Remote Communication. System shall automatically contact operator workstation or server on receipt of critical alarms. If no network connection is available, system shall use a modem connection.
  - 10. Demand Limiting.
    - a. The demand-limiting program shall monitor building power consumption from a building power meter (provided by others) which generates pulse signals or a BACnet communications interface. An acceptable alternative is for the system to monitor a watt transducer or current transformer attached to the building feeder lines.
    - b. When power consumption exceeds adjustable levels, system shall automatically adjust setpoints, de-energize low-priority equipment, and take other programmatic actions to reduce demand as specified in sequences of operation. When demand drops below adjustable levels, system shall restore loads as specified.
  - 11. Maintenance Management. The system shall be capable of generating maintenance alarms when equipment exceeds adjustable runtime, equipment starts, or performance limits. Configure and enable maintenance alarms as specified in sequences of operations.
  - 12. Sequencing. Application software shall sequence each piece of equipment as required by the specified sequences of operations.

- 13. PID Control. System shall provide direct- and reverse-acting PID (proportional-integralderivative) algorithms. Each algorithm shall have anti-windup and selectable controlled variable, setpoint, and PID gains. Each algorithm shall calculate a time-varying analog value that can be used to position an output or to stage a series of outputs. The calculation interval, PID gains, and other tuning parameters shall be adjustable by a user with the correct security level.
- 14. Staggered Start. System shall stagger controlled equipment restart after power outage. Operator shall be able to adjust equipment restart order and time delay between equipment restarts.
- 15. Energy Calculations.
  - a. The system shall accumulate and convert instantaneous power (kW) or flow rates (gpm) to energy usage data.
  - b. The system shall calculate a sliding-window average (rolling average). Operator shall be able to adjust window interval to 15 minutes, 30 minutes, or 60 minutes.
- 16. Anti-Short Cycling. All binary output objects shall be protected from short cycling by means of adjustable minimum on-time and off-time settings.
- 17. On and Off Control with Differential. Provide an algorithm that allows a binary output to be cycled based on a controlled variable and a setpoint. The algorithm shall be direct-acting or reverse-acting..
- 18. Runtime Totalization. Provide software to totalize runtime for each binary input and output. Operator shall be able to enable runtime alarm based on exceeded adjustable runtime limit. Configure and enable runtime totalization and alarms as required by Sequence of Operations.

# 2.5 CONTROLLERS

- A. General. Provide an adequate number of Building Controllers (BC), Advanced Application Controllers (AAC), Application Specific Controllers (ASC), Smart Actuators (SA), and Smart Sensors (SS) as required to achieve performance as specified by system performance. Every device in the system which executes control logic and directly controls HVAC equipment must conform to a standard BACnet Device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L. Unless otherwise specified, hardwired actuators and sensors may be used in lieu of communicating actuators, communicating sensors, BACnet Smart Actuators, and BACnet Smart Sensors
- B. BACnet.
  - 1. Building Controllers (BCs): Each BC shall conform to BACnet Building Controller (B-BC) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L, and shall be listed as a certified B-BC in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing.
  - Advanced Application Controllers (AACs): Each AAC shall conform to BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L and shall be listed as a certified B-AAC in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing.
  - 3. Smart Actuators (SAs): An actuator which is controlled by a network connection rather than a binary or analog signal (0-10v, 4-20mA, relay, etc.). Each SA shall conform to BACnet Smart Actuator (B-SA) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L and shall be listed as a certified B-SA in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing.

- 4. Smart Sensors (SSs): A sensor which provides information to the BAS via network connection rather than a binary or analog signal (0-10000 ohm, 4-20mA, dry contact, etc.). Each SS shall conform to BACnet Smart Sensor (B-SS) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L and shall be listed as a certified B-SS in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing.
- 5. BACnet Communication.
  - a. Each controller residing on the ethernet data link shall capable of providing BACnet/SC capability as described in the above Communication Section.
  - b. Each BC shall reside on or be connected to a BACnet network using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) Data Link/Physical layer protocol using BACnet/IP or BACnet/SC.
  - c. BACnet routing shall be performed by BCs or other BACnet device routers as necessary to connect BCs to networks of AACs and ASCs.
  - d. Each AAC shall reside on a BACnet network using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) Data Link/Physical layer protocol using BACnet/IP or BACnet/SC, or it shall reside on a BACnet network using the ARCNET or MS/TP Data Link/Physical layer protocol.
  - e. Each ASC shall reside on a BACnet network using the ARCNET or MS/TP Data Link/Physical layer protocol.
  - f. Each SA shall reside on a BACnet network using the ARCNET or MS/TP Data Link/Physical layer protocol.
  - g. Each SS shall reside on a BACnet network using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) Data Link/Physical layer protocol with BACnet/IP addressing, or it shall reside on a BACnet network using ARCNET or MS/TP Data Link/Physical layer protocol.

### C. Security.

- 1. Provide BACnet firewall capability, as defined in the BACnet standard, for controllers that are IP capable.
- D. Communication.
  - 1. Service Port. Each controller shall provide a service communication port for connection to a Portable Operator's Terminal
  - 2. Signal Management. BC and ASC operating systems shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and to allow for central monitoring and alarms.
  - 3. Data Sharing. Each BC and AAC shall share data as required with each networked BC and AAC.
  - 4. Stand-Alone Operation. Each piece of equipment shall be controlled by a single controller to provide stand-alone control in the event of communication failure. All I/O

points specified for a piece of equipment shall be integral to its controller. Provide stable and reliable stand-alone control using default values or other method for values normally read over the network such as outdoor air conditions, supply air or water temperature coming from source equipment, etc.

- E. Environment. Controller hardware shall be suitable for anticipated ambient conditions.
  - 1. Controllers used outdoors or in wet ambient conditions shall be mounted in waterproof enclosures and shall be rated for operation at 29°C to 60°C (20°F to 140°F).
  - 2. Controllers used in conditioned space shall be mounted in dust-protective enclosures and shall be rated for operation at 0°C to 50°C (32°F to 120°F).
- F. Serviceability. Provide diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor. All wiring connections shall be made to a field-removable modular terminal strip or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable. Each BC and AAC shall continually check its processor and memory circuit status and shall generate an alarm on abnormal operation. System shall continuously check controller network and generate alarm for each controller that fails to respond.
- G. Real-time Clock. Controller shall have a real-time clock to keep track of time in the event of a power failure for up to three (3) days.
- H. Memory
  - 1. Controller memory shall support operating system, database, and programming requirements.
  - 2. Each controller shall use volatile memory with battery backed up memory or nonvolatile memory and shall retain BIOS and application programming in the event of power loss. System shall automatically download dynamic control parameters following power loss.
- I. Security.
  - 1. Provide BACnet firewall capability, as defined in the BACnet standard.
- J. Building Controllers (BC)
  - 1. Communication
    - a. Network Connection. Controller shall support a single point ethernet connection.
    - b. Ethernet Port. Provide one (1) Gig-E port capable of full duplex communication up to 1000 Mbps
    - c. Service Port. Provide one (1) ethernet port for connection to a Portable Operator's Terminal.
    - d. Signal Management. BC shall have the ability to manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and to allow for central monitoring and alarms.
    - e. Data Sharing. Each BC and AAC shall share data as required with each networked BC and AAC.
    - f. Stand-Alone Operation. Each piece of equipment shall be controlled by a single controller to provide stand-alone control in the event of communication failure. All

I/O points specified for a piece of equipment shall be integral to its controller. Provide stable and reliable stand-alone control using default values or other method for values normally read over the network such as outdoor air conditions, supply air or water temperature coming from source equipment, etc.

- 2. Environment. Controller hardware shall be suitable for anticipated ambient conditions.
  - a. Controllers used outdoors or in wet ambient conditions shall be mounted in waterproof enclosures and shall be rated for operation at 29°C to 60°C (20°F to 140°F).
  - b. Controllers used in conditioned space shall be mounted in dust-protective enclosures and shall be rated for operation at  $0^{\circ}$ C to  $50^{\circ}$ C ( $32^{\circ}$ F to  $120^{\circ}$ F).
- 3. Serviceability. Provide diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor. All wiring connections shall be made to a field-removable modular terminal strip or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable. Each BC and AAC shall continually check its processor and memory circuit status and shall generate an alarm on abnormal operation. System shall continuously check controller network and generate alarm for each controller that fails to respond.
- 4. Real-time Clock. Controller shall have a real-time clock to keep track of time in the event of a power failure for up to three (3) days.
- 5. Memory
  - a. Controller memory shall support operating system, database, and programming requirements.
  - b. Each BC shall use nonvolatile memory and shall retain BIOS and application programming in the event of power loss. System shall automatically download dynamic control parameters following power loss.
- K. Advanced Application Controllers (AAC)
  - 1. Communication
    - a. Network Connection. Controller shall support a single point ethernet connection or a daisy-chained ethernet connection using the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP).
    - b. Ethernet Port. Provide two (2) 10/100 Base T ethernet ports with ethernet switching capability.
    - c. Service Port. Provide one (1) USB port for connection to a Portable Operator's Terminal or a display.
    - d. Stand-Alone Operation. Each piece of equipment shall be controlled by a single controller to provide stand-alone control in the event of communication failure. All I/O points specified for a piece of equipment shall be integral to its controller.

Provide stable and reliable stand-alone control using default values or other method for values normally read over the network such as outdoor air conditions, supply air or water temperature coming from source equipment, etc.

- 2. Environment. Controller hardware shall be suitable for anticipated ambient conditions.
  - a. Controllers used outdoors or in wet ambient conditions shall be mounted in waterproof enclosures and shall be rated for operation at 29°C to 60°C (20°F to 140°F).
  - b. Controllers used in conditioned space shall be mounted in dust-protective enclosures and shall be rated for operation at  $0^{\circ}$ C to  $50^{\circ}$ C ( $32^{\circ}$ F to  $120^{\circ}$ F).
- 3. Serviceability. Provide diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor. All wiring connections shall be made to a field-removable modular terminal strip or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable. Each AAC shall continually check its processor and memory circuit status and shall generate an alarm on abnormal operation. System shall continuously check controller network and generate alarm for each controller that fails to respond.
- 4. Real-time Clock. Controller shall have a real-time clock to keep track of time in the event of a power failure for up to three (3) days.
- 5. Memory
  - a. Controller memory shall support operating system, database, and programming requirements.
  - b. Each AAC shall use nonvolatile memory and shall retain BIOS and application programming in the event of power loss. System shall automatically download dynamic control parameters following power loss.
- L. Immunity to Power and Noise. Controllers shall be able to operate at 90% to 110% of nominal voltage rating and shall perform an orderly shutdown below 80% nominal voltage.
- M. Transformer. Power supply shall be fused or current limiting and shall be rated at a minimum of 125% of controller power consumption.

### 2.6 INPUT AND OUTPUT INTERFACE

- A. General. Hard-wire input and output points to BCs, AACs, or ASCs.
- B. Protection. All input points and output points shall be protected such that shorting of the point to itself, to another point, or to ground shall cause no damage to the controller. All input and output points shall be protected from voltage up to 24 V of any duration, such that contact with this voltage will cause no controller damage.

- C. Binary Inputs. Binary inputs shall allow the monitoring of ON/OFF signals from remote devices. Binary inputs shall sense dry contact closure without application of power external to the controller.
- D. Pulse Accumulation Inputs. Pulse accumulation inputs shall conform to binary input requirements and shall also accumulate up to 10 pulses per second.
- E. Analog Inputs. Analog inputs shall monitor low-voltage (0–10 Vdc), current (4–20 mA), or resistance (thermistor or RTD) signals. Analog inputs shall be compatible with and field configurable to commonly available sensing devices.
- F. Binary Outputs. Binary outputs shall provide for ON/OFF operation or a pulsed low-voltage signal for pulse width modulation control. Binary outputs on Building Controllers have three-position (on-off-auto) override switches and status lights. Outputs shall be selectable for normally open or normally closed operation.
- G. Analog Outputs. Analog outputs shall provide a modulating signal for the control of end devices. Outputs shall provide either a 0–10 Vdc or a 4–20 mA signal as required to properly control output devices. Each Building Controller analog output shall have a two-position (auto-manual) switch, a manually adjustable potentiometer, and status lights. Analog outputs shall not drift more than 0.4% of range annually.
- H. Tri-State Outputs. Control three-point floating electronic actuators without feedback with tristate outputs (two coordinated binary outputs). Tri-State outputs may be used to provide analog output control in zone control and terminal unit control applications such as VAV terminal units, duct-mounted heating coils, and zone dampers.
- I. Universal Inputs and Outputs. Inputs and outputs that can be designated as either binary or analog in software shall conform to the provisions of this section that are appropriate for their designated use.

# 2.7 POWER SUPPLIES AND LINE FILTERING

- A. Power Supplies. Control transformers shall be UL listed. Furnish Class 2 current-limiting type or furnish over-current protection in primary and secondary circuits for Class 2 service in accordance with NEC requirements. Limit connected loads to 80% of rated capacity.
  - DC power supply output shall match output current and voltage requirements. Unit shall be full-wave rectifier type with output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak-to-peak. Regulation shall be 1.0% line and load combined, with 100-microsecond response time for 50% load changes. Unit shall have built-in over-voltage and over-current protection and shall be able to withstand 150% current overload for at least three seconds without trip-out or failure.
    - a. Unit shall operate between 0°C and 50°C (32°F and 120°F). EM/RF shall meet FCC Class B and VDE 0871 for Class B and MILSTD 810C for shock and vibration.
    - b. Line voltage units shall be UL recognized and CSA listed.

- B. Power Line Filtering.
  - 1. Provide internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations and controllers. Surge protection shall have:
    - a. Dielectric strength of 1000 V minimum
    - b. Response time of 10 nanoseconds or less
    - c. Transverse mode noise attenuation of 65 dB or greater
    - d. Common mode noise attenuation of 150 dB or greater at 40–100 Hz

# 2.8 AUXILIARY CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Communicating Sensors.
- B. Motorized Control Dampers, unless otherwise specified elsewhere, shall be as follow.
  - 1. Type. Control dampers shall be the parallel or opposed-blade type as specified below or as scheduled on drawings.
    - a. Outdoor and return air mixing dampers and face-and-bypass dampers shall be parallel-blade and shall direct airstreams toward each other.
    - b. Other modulating dampers shall be opposed-blade.
    - c. Two-position shutoff dampers shall be parallel- or opposed-blade with blade and side seals.
  - 2. Frame. Damper frames shall be 2.38 mm (13 gauge) galvanized steel channel or 3.175 mm (<sup>1</sup>/<sub>8</sub> in.) extruded aluminum with reinforced corner bracing.
  - 3. Blades. Damper blades shall not exceed 20 cm (8 in.) in width or 125 cm (48 in.) in length. Blades shall be suitable for medium velocity (10 m/s [2000 fpm]) performance. Blades shall be not less than 1.5875 mm (16 gauge).
  - 4. Shaft Bearings. Damper shaft bearings shall be as recommended by manufacturer for application, oil impregnated sintered bronze, or better.
  - 5. Seals. Blade edges and frame top and bottom shall have replaceable seals of butyl rubber or neoprene. Side seals shall be spring-loaded stainless steel. Blade seals shall leak no more than 50 L/s·m2 (10 cfm per ft2) at 1000 Pa (4 in. w.g.) differential pressure. Blades shall be airfoil type suitable for wide-open face velocity of 7.5 m/s (1500 fpm).
  - 6. Sections. Individual damper sections shall not exceed 125 cm  $\times$  150 cm (48 in.  $\times$  60 in.). Each section shall have at least one damper actuator.
  - 7. Modulating dampers shall provide a linear flow characteristic where possible.

- 8. Linkages. Dampers shall have exposed linkages.
- C. Electric Damper and Valve Actuators.
  - 1. Stall Protection. Mechanical or electronic stall protection shall prevent actuator damage throughout the actuator's rotation.
  - 2. Spring-return Mechanism. Actuators used for power-failure and safety applications shall have an internal mechanical spring-return mechanism or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS).
  - 3. Signal and Range. Proportional actuators shall accept a 0–10 Vdc or a 0–20 mA control signal and shall have a 2–10 Vdc or 4–20 mA operating range. (Floating motor actuators may be substituted for proportional actuators in terminal unit applications as described in paragraph 2.6H.)
  - 4. Wiring. 24 Vac and 24 Vdc actuators shall operate on Class 2 wiring.
  - 5. Manual Positioning. Operators shall be able to manually position each actuator when the actuator is not powered. Non-spring-return actuators shall have an external manual gear release. Spring-return actuators with more than 7 N⋅m (60 in.-lb) torque capacity shall have a manual crank.
- D. Control Valves.
  - 1. Control valves shall be two-way or three-way type for two-position or modulating service as
  - 2. Close-off (differential) Pressure Rating: Valve actuator and trim shall be furnished to provide the following minimum close-off pressure ratings:
    - a. Water Valves:
      - 1) Two-way: 150% of total system (pump) head.
      - 2) Three-way: 300% of pressure differential between ports A and B at design flow or 100% of total system (pump) head.
    - b. Steam Valves: 150% of operating (inlet) pressure.
  - 3. Water Valves.
    - a. Body and trim style and materials shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for design conditions and service shown, with equal percentage ports for modulating service.
    - b. Sizing Criteria:
      - 1) Two-position service: Line size.

- 2) Two-way modulating service: Pressure drop shall be equal to twice the pressure drop through heat exchanger (load), 50% of the pressure difference between supply and return mains, or 5 psi, whichever is greater.
- 3) Three-way modulating service: Pressure drop equal to twice the pressure drop through the coil exchanger (load), 35 kPa (5 psi) maximum.
- c. Valves ½ in. through 2 in. shall be bronze body or cast brass ANSI Class 250, spring-loaded, PTFE packing, quick opening for two-position service. Two-way valves to have replaceable composition disc or stainless steel ball.
- d. Valves 2<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> in. and larger shall be cast iron ANSI Class 125 with guided plug and PTFE packing.
- e. Water valves shall fail normally open or closed, as scheduled on plans, or as follows:
  - 1) Water zone valves—normally open preferred.
  - 2) Heating coils in air handlers—normally open.
  - 3) Chilled water control valves—normally closed.
  - 4) Other applications—as scheduled or as required by sequences of operation..
- 4. Steam Valves.
  - a. Body and trim materials shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for design conditions and service with linear ports for modulating service.
  - b. Sizing Criteria:
    - 1) Two-position service: pressure drop 10% to 20% of inlet psig.
    - 2) Modulating service: 100 kPa (15 psig) or less; pressure drop 80% of inlet psig.
    - 3) Modulating service: 101 to 350 kPa (16 to 50 psig); pressure drop 50% of inlet psig.
    - 4) Modulating service: over 350 kPa (50 psig); pressure drop as scheduled on plans.
- E. Temperature Sensors.
  - 1. Type. Temperature sensors shall be thermistor (10k Type2).
  - 2. Duct Sensors. Duct sensors shall be single point or averaging as shown. Averaging sensors shall be a minimum of 1.5 m (5 ft) in length per 1 m2 (10 ft2) of duct cross-section.

- 3. Immersion Sensors. Provide immersion sensors with a separable stainless steel well. Well pressure rating shall be consistent with system pressure it will be immersed in. Well shall withstand pipe design flow velocities.
- 4. Space Sensors. Space sensors shall have setpoint adjustment, override switch, display, and communication port as shown.
- 5. Differential Sensors. Provide matched sensors for differential temperature measurement.
- F. Humidity Sensors.
  - 1. Duct and room sensors shall have a sensing range of 20%–80%.
  - 2. Duct sensors shall have a sampling chamber.
  - 3. Outdoor air humidity sensors shall have a sensing range of 20%–95% RH and shall be suitable for ambient conditions of -40°C–75°C (-40°F–170°F).
  - 4. Humidity sensors shall not drift more than 1% of full scale annually.
- G. Flow Switches. Flow-proving switches shall be paddle (water service only) or differential pressure type (air or water service) as shown. Switches shall be UL listed, SPDT snap-acting, and pilot duty rated (125 VA minimum).
  - 1. Paddle switches shall have adjustable sensitivity and NEMA 1 enclosure unless otherwise specified.
  - 2. Differential pressure switches shall have scale range and differential suitable for intended application and NEMA 1 enclosure unless otherwise specified.
- H. Relays.
  - 1. Control Relays. Control relays shall be plug-in type, UL listed, and shall have dust cover and LED "energized" indicator. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage shall be suitable for application.
  - 2. Time Delay Relays. Time delay relays shall be solid-state plug-in type, UL listed, and shall have adjustable time delay. Delay shall be adjustable ±100% from setpoint shown. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage shall be suitable for application. Provide NEMA 1 enclosure for relays not installed in local control panel.
- I. Override Timers.
  - 1. Unless implemented in control software, override timers shall be spring-wound line voltage, UL Listed, with contact rating and configuration required by application. Provide 0–6 hour calibrated dial unless otherwise specified. Flush mount timer on local control panel face or where shown.
- J. Current Transmitters.
  - 1. AC current transmitters shall be self-powered, combination split-core current transformer type with built-in rectifier and high-gain servo amplifier with 4–20 mA two-wire output.

Full-scale unit ranges shall be 10 A, 20 A, 50 A, 100 A, 150 A, and 200 A, with internal zero and span adjustment. Unit accuracy shall be  $\pm 1\%$  full-scale at 500 ohm maximum burden.

- 2. Transmitter shall meet or exceed ANSI/ISA S50.1 requirements and shall be UL/CSA recognized.
- 3. Unit shall be split-core type for clamp-on installation on existing wiring.
- K. Current Transformers.
  - 1. AC current transformers shall be UL/CSA recognized and shall be completely encased (except for terminals) in approved plastic material.
  - 2. Transformers shall be available in various current ratios and shall be selected for  $\pm 1\%$  accuracy at 5 A full-scale output.
  - 3. Use fixed-core transformers for new wiring installation and split-core transformers for existing wiring installation.
- L. Voltage Transmitters.
  - 1. AC voltage transmitters shall be self-powered single-loop (two-wire) type, 4–20 mA output with zero and span adjustment.
  - 2. Adjustable full-scale unit ranges shall be 100-130 Vac, 200-250 Vac, 250-330 Vac, and 400-600 Vac. Unit accuracy shall be  $\pm 1\%$  full-scale at 500 ohm maximum burden.
  - 3. Transmitters shall meet or exceed ANSI/ISA S50.1 requirements and shall be UL/CSA recognized at 600 Vac rating.
- M. Voltage Transformers.
  - 1. AC voltage transformers shall be UL/CSA recognized, 600 Vac rated, and shall have built-in fuse protection.
  - 2. Transformers shall be suitable for ambient temperatures of  $4^{\circ}C-55^{\circ}C$  ( $40^{\circ}F-130^{\circ}F$ ) and shall provide  $\pm 0.5\%$  accuracy at 24 Vac and 5 VA load.
  - 3. Windings (except for terminals) shall be completely enclosed with metal or plastic.
- N. Power Monitors.
  - 1. Selectable rate pulse output for kWh reading, 4–20 mA output for kW reading, N.O. alarm contact, and ability to operate with 5.0 amp current inputs or 0–0.33 volt inputs.
  - 2. 1.0% full-scale true RMS power accuracy, +0.5 Hz, voltage input range 120–600 V, and auto range select.
  - 3. Under voltage/phase monitor circuitry.
  - 4. NEMA 1 enclosure.

- 5. Current transformers having a 0.5% FS accuracy, 600 VAC isolation voltage with 0–0.33 V output. If 0–5 A current transformers are provided, a three-phase disconnect/shorting switch assembly is required.
- O. Hydronic Flowmeters
  - 1. Insertion-Type Turbine Meter
    - a. Dual counter-rotating axial turbine elements, each with its own rotational sensing system, and an averaging circuit to reduce measurement errors due to swirl and flow profile distortion. Single turbine for piping 2 inches and smaller. Flow sensing turbine rotors shall be non-metallic and not impaired by magnetic drag.
    - b. Insertion type complete with 'hot-tap' isolation valves to enable sensor removal without water supply system shutdown.
    - c. Sensing method shall be impedance sensing (non magnetic and nonphotoelectric)
    - d. Volumetric accuracy
      - 1)  $\pm 0.5\%$  of reading at calibrated velocity
      - 2)  $\pm$  1% of reading from 3 to 30 ft/s (10:1 range)
      - 3)  $\pm 2\%$  of reading from 0.4 to 20 ft/s (50:1 range)
    - e. Each sensor shall be individually calibrated and tagged accordingly against the manufacturer's primary standards which must be accurate to within 0.1% of flow rate and traceable to the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST).
    - f. Maximum operating pressure of 400 psi and maximum operating temperature of 95°C (200°F) continuous or 105°C (220°F) peak.
    - g. All wetted metal parts shall be constructed of 316 stainless steel.
    - h. Analog outputs shall consist of noninteractive zero and span adjustments, a DC linearly of 0.1% of span, voltage output of 0-10 Vdc, and current output of 4-20 mA.
  - 2. Magnetic Flow-Tube Type Flowmeter
    - a. Sensor shall be a magnetic flowmeter, which utilizes Faraday's Law to measure volumetric fluid flow through a pipe. The flowmeter shall consist of two elements, the sensor and the electronics. The sensor shall generate a measuring signal proportional to the flow velocity in the pipe. The electronics shall convert this EMF into a standard current output.
    - b. Electronic replacement shall not affect meter accuracy (electronic units are not matched with specific sensors).
    - c. Four-wire, externally powered, magnetic type flow transmitter with adjustable span and zero, integrally mounted to flow tube. Output signal shall be a digital

pulse proportional to the flow rate (to provide maximum accuracy and to handle abrupt changes in flow). Standard 4-20 mA or 0-10 Vdc outputs may be used provided accuracy is as specified.

- d. Flow Tube:
  - 1) ANSI class 150 psig steel
  - 2) ANSI flanges
  - 3) Protected with PTFE, PFA, or ETFE liner rated for 120°C (245°F) minimum fluid temperature
- e. Electrode and grounding material
  - 1) 316L Stainless steel or Hastelloy C
  - 2) Electrodes shall be fused to ceramic liner and not require o-rings.
- f. Electrical Enclosure: NEMA 4, 7
- g. Approvals:
  - 1) UL or CSA.
  - 2) NSF Drinking Water approval for domestic water applications
- h. Performance
  - 1) Accuracy shall be  $\pm 0.5\%$  of actual reading from 3 to 30 ft/s flow velocities, and 0.015 ft/s from 0.04 to 3 ft/s.
  - 2) Stability: 0.1% of rate over six months.
  - 3) Meter repeatability shall be  $\pm 0.1\%$  of rate at velocities > 3 ft/s.
- 3. Magnetic Insertion-Type Flowmeter
  - a. Magnetic Faraday point velocity measuring device.
  - b. Insertion type complete with hot-tap isolation valves to enable sensor removal without water supply system shutdown.
  - c. 4-20 mA transmitter proportional to flow or velocity.
  - d. Accuracy: larger of 1% of reading and 0.2 ft/s.
  - e. Flow range: 0.2 to 20 ft/s, bidirectional.
  - f. Each sensor shall be individually calibrated and tagged accordingly against the manufacturer's primary standards which must be accurate to within 0.1% of flow rate and traceable to the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST).

- 4. Vortex Shedding Flowmeter
  - a. Output: 4-20 mA, 0-10 Vdc, 0-5 Vdc.
  - b. Maximum Fluid Temperature: 427 °C (800 °F).
  - c. Wetted Parts: Stainless Steel.
  - d. Housing: NEMA 4X.
  - e. Turndown: 25:1 minimum.
  - f. Accuracy: 0.5% of calibrated span for liquids, 1% of calibrated span for steam and gases.
  - g. Body: Wafer style or ANSI flanged to match piping specification.
- 5. Transit-Time Ultrasonic Flowmeter
  - a. Clamp-On transit-time ultrasonic flowmeter
  - b. Wide-Beam transducer technology
  - c. 4-20 mA transmitter proportional to flow or velocity.
  - d. Accuracy: 0.5% of reading in range 1 to 30 ft/s, 0.001 ft/s sensitivity.
- P. Thermal Energy Meters
  - 1. Matched RTD, solid state, or thermistor temperature sensors with a differential temperature accuracy of  $\pm 0.08$  °C ( $\pm 0.15$  °F).
  - 2. Flow meter : See "Hydronic Flowmeters" section.
  - 3. Unit accuracy of  $\pm 1\%$  factory calibrated, traceable to NIST with certification.
  - 4. NEMA 1 enclosure.
  - 5. Panel mounted display.
  - 6. UL listed.
  - 7. Isolated 4–20 ma signals for energy rate and supply and return temperatures and flow.
- Q. Current Switches.
  - 1. Current-operated switches shall be self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current. Select switches to match application current and DDC system output requirements.
- R. Pressure Transducers.
  - 1. Transducers shall have linear output signal and field-adjustable zero and span.

- 2. Transducer sensing elements shall withstand continuous operating conditions of positive or negative pressure 50% greater than calibrated span without damage.
- 3. Water pressure transducer diaphragm shall be stainless steel with minimum proof pressure of 1000 kPa (150 psi). Transducer shall have 4–20 mA output, suitable mounting provisions, and block and bleed valves.
- 4. Water differential pressure transducer diaphragm shall be stainless steel with minimum proof pressure of 1000 kPa (150 psi). Over-range limit (differential pressure) and maximum static pressure shall be 2000 kPa (300 psi.) Transducer shall have 4–20 mA output, suitable mounting provisions, and 5-valve manifold.
- S. Differential Pressure Switches. Differential pressure switches (air or water service) shall be UL listed, SPDT snap-acting, pilot duty rated (125 VA minimum) and shall have scale range and differential suitable for intended application and NEMA 1 enclosure unless otherwise specified.
- T. Pressure-Electric (PE) Switches.
  - 1. Shall be metal or neoprene diaphragm actuatied, operating pressure rated for 0–175 kPa (0–25 psig), with calibrated scale minimum setpoint range of 14–125 kPa (2–18 psig) minimum, UL listed.
  - 2. Provide one- or two-stage switch action (SPDT, DPST, or DPDT) as required by application Electrically rated for pilot duty service (125 VA minimum) and /or for motor control.
  - 3. Switches shall be open type (panel-mounted) or enclosed type for remote installation. Enclosed type shall be NEMA 1 unless otherwise specified.
  - 4. Each pneumatic signal line to PE switches shall have permanent indicating gauge.
- U. Occupancy Sensors. Occupancy sensors shall utilize Passive Infrared (PIR) and/or Microphonic Passive technology to detect the presence of people within a room. Sensors shall be mounted as indicated on the approved drawings. The sensor output shall be accessible by any lighting and/or HVAC controller in the system. Occupancy sensors shall be capable of being powered from the lighting or HVAC control panel, as shown on the drawings. Occupancy sensor delay shall be software adjustable through the user interface and shall not require manual adjustment at the sensor.

### 2.9 LOCAL CONTROL PANELS.

- A. All indoor control cabinets shall be fully enclosed NEMA 1 construction with (hinged door) key-lock latch and removable subpanels. A single key shall be common to all field panels and subpanels.
- B. Interconnections between internal and face-mounted devices shall be prewired with color-coded stranded conductors neatly installed in plastic troughs and/or tie-wrapped. Terminals for field connections shall be UL listed for 600 volt service, individually identified per control/ interlock drawings, with adequate clearance for field wiring. Control terminations for field connection shall be individually identified per control drawings.

C. Provide ON/OFF power switch with overcurrent protection for control power sources to each local panel.

# 2.10 WIRING AND RACEWAYS

- A. General. Provide copper wiring, plenum cable, and raceways as specified in applicable sections of Division 26.
- B. Insulated wire shall use copper conductors and shall be UL listed for 90°C (200°F) minimum service.

# 2.11 FIBER OPTIC CABLE SYSTEM

- A. Optical Cable. Optical cables shall be duplex 900 mm tight-buffer construction designed for intra-building environments. Sheath shall be UL listed OFNP in accordance with NEC Article 770. Optical fiber shall meet the requirements of FDDI, ANSI X3T9.5 PMD for 62.5/125mm.
- B. Connectors. Field terminate optical fibers with ST type connectors. Connectors shall have ceramic ferrules and metal bayonet latching bodies.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

# 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. The project plans shall be thoroughly examined for control device and equipment locations. Any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions shall be reported to the architect/engineer for resolution before rough-in work is started.
- B. The contractor shall inspect the site to verify that equipment may be installed as shown. Any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions shall be reported to the engineer for resolution before rough-in work is started.
- C. The contractor shall examine the drawings and specifications for other parts of the work. If head room or space conditions appear inadequate—or if any discrepancies occur between the plans and the contractor's work and the plans and the work of others—the contractor shall report these discrepancies to the engineer and shall obtain written instructions for any changes necessary to accommodate the contractor's work with the work of others. Any changes in the work covered by this specification made necessary by the failure or neglect of the contractor to report such discrepancies shall be made by—and at the expense of—this contractor

### 3.2 **PROTECTION**

- A. The contractor shall protect all work and material from damage by his/her work or employees and shall be liable for all damage thus caused.
- B. The contractor shall be responsible for his/her work and equipment until finally inspected, tested, and accepted. The contractor shall protect any material that is not immediately installed. The contractor shall close all open ends of work with temporary covers or plugs during storage and construction to prevent entry of foreign objects

### 3.3 COORDINATION

- A. Site.
  - 1. Where the mechanical work will be installed in close proximity to, or will interfere with, work of other trades, the contractor shall assist in working out space conditions to make a satisfactory adjustment. If the contractor installs his/her work before coordinating with other trades, so as to cause any interference with work of other trades, the contractor shall make the necessary changes in his/her work to correct the condition without extra charge.
  - 2. Coordinate and schedule work with other work in the same area and with work dependent upon other work to facilitate mutual progress.
- B. Test and Balance.
  - 1. The contractor shall furnish a single set of all tools necessary to interface to the control system for test and balance purposes.
  - 2. The contractor shall provide training in the use of these tools. This training will be planned for a minimum of 4 hours.
  - 3. In addition, the contractor shall provide a qualified technician to assist in the test and balance process, until the first 20 terminal units are balanced.
  - 4. The tools used during the test and balance process will be returned at the completion of the testing and balancing
- C. Life Safety.
  - 1. Duct smoke detectors required for air handler shutdown are provided under Division 28. Interlock smoke detectors to air handlers for shutdown as specified in Section 23 09 93 (Sequences of Operation).
  - 2. Smoke dampers and actuators required for duct smoke isolation are provided under Division 15. Interlock smoke dampers to air handlers as specified in Section 23 09 93 (Sequences of Operation).
  - 3. Fire and smoke dampers and actuators required for fire-rated walls are provided under Division 23. Fire and smoke damper control is provided under Division 28.
- D. Coordination with controls specified in other sections or divisions. Other sections and/or divisions of this specification include controls and control devices that are to be part of or interfaced to the control system specified in this section. These controls shall be integrated into the system and coordinated by the contractor as follows:.
  - 1. All communication media and equipment shall be provided as specified in Section 23 09 23 Article 2.2 (Communication).
  - 2. Each supplier of a controls product is responsible for the configuration, programming, start up, and testing of that product to meet the sequences of operation described in Section 23 09 93

- 3. The contractor shall coordinate and resolve any incompatibility issues that arise between control products provided under this section and those provided under other sections or divisions of this specification.
- 4. The contractor is responsible for providing all controls described in the contract documents regardless of where within the contract documents these controls are described
- 5. The contractor is responsible for the interface of control products provided by multiple suppliers regardless of where this interface is described within the contract documents.

# 3.4 GENERAL WORKMANSHIP

- A. Install equipment, piping, and wiring/raceway parallel to building lines (i.e. horizontal, vertical, and parallel to walls) wherever possible.
- B. Provide sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.
- C. Install equipment in readily accessible locations as defined by Chapter 1 Article 100 Part A of the National Electrical Code (NEC).
- D. Verify integrity of all wiring to ensure continuity and freedom from shorts and grounds.
- E. All equipment, installation, and wiring shall comply with industry specifications and standards for performance, reliability, and compatibility and be executed in strict adherence to local codes and standard practices.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. All work, materials, and equipment shall comply with rules and regulations of applicable local, state, and federal codes and ordinances as identified in Section 23 09 23 Article 1.8 (Codes and Standards).
- B. Contractor shall continually monitor the field installation for code compliance and quality of workmanship.
- C. Contractor shall have work inspection by local and/or state authorities having jurisdiction over the work.

# 3.6 WIRING

- A. All control and interlock wiring shall comply with national and local electrical codes, and Division 26 of this specification. Where the requirements of this section differ from Division 26, the requirements of this section shall take precedence.
- B. All NEC Class 1 (line voltage) wiring shall be UL listed in approved raceway according to NEC and Division 26 requirements.
- C. All low-voltage wiring shall meet NEC Class 2 requirements. Low-voltage power circuits shall be subfused when required to meet Class 2 current limit.

- D. Where NEC Class 2 (current-limited) wires are in concealed and accessible locations, including ceiling return air plenums, approved cables not in raceway may be used provided that cables are UL listed for the intended application.
- E. All wiring in mechanical, electrical, or service rooms or where subject to mechanical damage shall be installed in raceway at levels below 3 m (10ft).
- F. Do not install Class 2 wiring in raceways containing Class 1 wiring. Boxes and panels containing high-voltage wiring and equipment may not be used for low-voltage wiring except for the purpose of interfacing the two (e.g. relays and transformers).
- G. Do not install wiring in raceway containing tubing.
- H. Where Class 2 wiring is run exposed, wiring is to be run parallel along a surface or perpendicular to it and neatly tied at 3 m (10 ft) intervals.
- I. Where plenum cables are used without raceway, they shall be supported from or anchored to structural members. Cables shall not be supported by or anchored to ductwork, electrical raceways, piping, or ceiling suspension systems.
- J. All wire-to-device connections shall be made at a terminal block or terminal strip. All wire-towire connections shall be at a terminal block.
- K. All wiring within enclosures shall be neatly bundled and anchored to permit access and prevent restriction to devices and terminals.
- L. Maximum allowable voltage for control wiring shall be 120 V. If only higher voltages are available, the contractor shall provide step-down transformers.
- M. All wiring shall be installed as continuous lengths, with no splices permitted between termination points.
- N. Install plenum wiring in sleeves where it passes through walls and floors. Maintain fire rating at all penetrations.
- O. Size of raceway and size and type of wire shall be the responsibility of the contractor in keeping with the manufacturer's recommendations and NEC requirements, except as noted elsewhere.
- P. Include one pull string in each raceway 2.5 cm (1 in.) or larger.
- Q. Use color-coded conductors throughout with conductors of different colors.
- R. Control and status relays are to be located in designated enclosures only. These enclosures include packaged equipment control panel enclosures unless they also contain Class 1 starters.
- S. Conceal all raceways except within mechanical, electrical, or service rooms. Install raceway to maintain a minimum clearance of 15 cm (6 in.) from high-temperature equipment (e.g. steam pipes or flues).

- T. Secure raceways with raceway clamps fastened to the structure and spaced according to code requirements. Raceways and pull boxes may not be hung on flexible duct strap or tie rods. Raceways may not be run on or attached to ductwork.
- U. Adhere to this specification's Division 26 requirements where raceway crosses building expansion joints.
- V. Install insulated bushings on all raceway ends and openings to enclosures. Seal top end of vertical raceways.
- W. The contractor shall terminate all control and/or interlock wiring and shall maintain updated (asbuilt) wiring diagrams with terminations identified at the job site.
- X. Flexible metal raceways and liquid-tight flexible metal raceways shall not exceed 1 m (3 ft) in length and shall be supported at each end. Flexible metal raceway less than <sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> in. electrical trade size shall not be used. In areas exposed to moisture, including chiller and boiler rooms, liquid-tight, flexible metal raceways shall be used.
- Y. Raceway must be rigidly installed, adequately supported, properly reamed at both ends, and left clean and free of obstructions. Raceway sections shall be joined with couplings (according to code). Terminations must be made with fittings at boxes, and ends not terminating in boxes shall have bushings installed.

# 3.7 COMMUNICATION WIRING

- A. The contractor shall adhere to the items listed in the Wiring" article in Part 3 of the specification.
- B. All cabling shall be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner. Follow manufacturer's installation recommendations for all communication cabling.
- C. Do not install communication wiring in raceways and enclosures containing Class 1 or other Class 2 wiring.
- D. Maximum pulling, tension, and bend radius for the cable installation, as specified by the cable manufacturer, shall not be exceeded during installation.
- E. Contractor shall verify the integrity of the entire network following cable installation. Use appropriate test measures for each particular cable.
- F. When a cable enters or exits a building, a lightning arrestor must be installed between the lines and ground. The lighting arrestor shall be installed according to manufacturer's instructions.
- G. All runs of communication wiring shall be unspliced length when that length is commercially available.
- H. All communication wiring shall be labeled to indicate origination and destination data.
- I. Grounding of coaxial cable shall be in accordance with NEC regulations article on "Communications Circuits, Cable, and Protector Grounding."

- J. BACnet IP, Arcnet or MS/TP communications wiring shall be installed in accordance with ASHRAE/ANSI Standard 135. This includes but is not limited to:
  - 1. IP
    - a. The network shall use Cat5e or greater cabling for connections.
    - b. Custom made patch cables must use either the T568A or T568 wiring standard and must use the same standard on both ends of the cable.
  - 2. Arcnet
    - a. The network shall use shielded, twisted-pair cable with characteristic impedance between 100 nominal. Distributed capacitance between conductors shall be less than 12.5 pF per foot (41 pF per meter.)
    - b. The maximum length of an Arcnet segment is 610 meters (2000 ft) with AWG 22 cable.
    - c. The maximum number of nodes per segment shall be 32, as specified in the EIA 485 standard. Additional nodes may be accommodated by the use of repeaters.
    - d. An Arcnet network shall have no T connections.
  - 3. MS/TP
    - a. The network shall use shielded, twisted-pair cable with characteristic impedance between 100 and 120 ohms. Distributed capacitance between conductors shall be less than 100 pF per meter (30 pF per foot.)
    - b. The maximum length of an MS/TP segment is 1200 meters (4000 ft) with AWG 18 cable. The use of greater distances and/or different wire gauges shall comply with the electrical specifications of EIA-485
    - c. The maximum number of nodes per segment shall be 32, as specified in the EIA 485 standard. Additional nodes may be accommodated by the use of repeaters.
    - d. An MS/TP EIA-485 network shall have no T connections.

#### 3.8 FIBER OPTIC CABLE

- A. Maximum pulling tensions as specified by the cable manufacturer shall not be exceeded during installation. Post-installation residual cable tension shall be within cable manufacturer's specifications.
- B. All cabling and associated components shall be installed in accordance with manufacturers' instructions. Minimum cable and unjacketed fiber bend radii, as specified by cable manufacturer, shall be maintained.

#### 3.9 INSTALLATION OF SENSORS

- A. Install sensors in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Mount sensors rigidly and adequately for environment within which the sensor operates.
- C. Room temperature sensors shall be installed on concealed junction boxes properly supported by wall framing.
- D. All wires attached to sensors shall be sealed in their raceways or in the wall to stop air transmitted from other areas from affecting sensor readings.
- E. Sensors used in mixing plenums and hot and cold decks shall be of the averaging type. Averaging sensors shall be installed in a serpentine manner vertically across the duct. Each bend shall be supported with a capillary clip.
- F. Low-limit sensors used in mixing plenums shall be installed in a serpentine manner horizontally across duct. Each bend shall be supported with a capillary clip. Provide 3 m (1 ft) of sensing element for each 1 m2 (1 ft2) of coil area.
- G. Do not install temperature sensors within the vapor plume of a humidifier. If installing a sensor downstream of a humidifier, install it at least 3 m (10 ft) downstream.
- H. All pipe-mounted temperature sensors shall be installed in wells. Install liquid temperature sensors with heat-conducting fluid in thermal wells.
- I. Install outdoor air temperature sensors on north wall, complete with sun shield at designated location.
- J. Differential Air Static Pressure.
  - 1. Supply Duct Static Pressure. Pipe the high-pressure tap to the duct using a pitot tube. Pipe the low-pressure port to a tee in the high-pressure tap tubing of the corresponding building static pressure sensor (if applicable) or to the location of the duct high-pressure tap and leave open to the plenum.
  - 2. Return Duct Static Pressure. Pipe high-pressure tap to duct using a pitot tube. Pipe the low-pressure port to a tee in the low-pressure tap tubing of the corresponding building static pressure sensor.
  - 3. Building Static Pressure. Pipe the low-pressure port of the pressure sensor to the static pressure port located on the outside of the building through a high-volume accumulator. Pipe the high-pressure port to a location behind a thermostat cover.
  - 4. The piping to the pressure ports on all pressure transducers shall contain a capped test port located adjacent to the transducer.
  - 5. All pressure transducers, other than those controlling VAV boxes, shall be located in field device panels, not on the equipment monitored or on ductwork. Mount transducers in a location accessible for service without use of ladders or special equipment.

- 6. All air and water differential pressure sensors shall have gauge tees mounted adjacent to the taps. Water gauges shall also have shut-off valves installed before the tee.
- K. Smoke detectors, freezestats, high-pressure cut-offs, and other safety switches shall be hardwired to de-energize equipment as described in the sequence of operation. Switches shall require manual reset. Provide contacts that allow DDC software to monitor safety switch status.
- L. Install humidity sensors for duct mounted humidifiers at least 3 m (10 ft) downstream of the humidifier. Do not install filters between the humidifier and the sensor.

### 3.10 FLOW SWITCH INSTALLATION

- A. Use correct paddle for pipe diameter.
- B. Adjust flow switch according to manufacturer's instructions.

# 3.11 ACTUATORS

- A. General. Mount and link control damper actuators according to manufacturer's instructions.
  - 1. To compress seals when spring-return actuators are used on normally closed dampers, power actuator to approximately 5° open position, manually close the damper, and then tighten the linkage.
  - 2. Check operation of damper/actuator combination to confirm that actuator modulates damper smoothly throughout stroke to both open and closed positions.
  - 3. Provide all mounting hardware and linkages for actuator installation.
- B. Electric/ Electronic
  - 1. Dampers: Actuators shall be direct mounted on damper shaft or jackshaft unless shown as a linkage installation. For low-leakage dampers with seals, the actuator shall be mounted with a minimum 5° travel available for tightening the damper seal. Actuators shall be mounted following manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 2. Valves: Actuators shall be connected to valves with adapters approved by the actuator manufacturer. Actuators and adapters shall be mounted following the actuator manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.12 WARNING LABELS

- A. Permanent warning labels shall be affixed to all equipment that can be automatically started by the control system.
  - 1. Labels shall use white lettering (12-point type or larger) on a red background.
  - 2. Warning labels shall read as follows.
    - a. C A U T I O N: This equipment is operating under automatic control and may start or stop at any time without warning. Switch disconnect to "Off" position before servicing.

- B. Permanent warning labels shall be affixed to all motor starters and control panels that are connected to multiple power sources utilizing separate disconnects.
  - 1. Labels shall use white lettering (12-point type or larger) on a red background.
  - 2. Warning labels shall read as follows.
    - a. C A U T I O N: This equipment is fed from more than one power source with separate disconnects. Disconnect all power sources before servicing.

### 3.13 IDENTIFICATION OF HARDWARE AND WIRING

- A. All wiring and cabling, including that within factory-fabricated panels, shall be labeled at each end within 5 cm (2 in.) of termination with control system address or termination number.
- B. All pneumatic tubing shall be labeled at each end within 5 cm (2 in.) of termination with a descriptive identifier.
- C. Permanently label or code each point of field terminal strips to show the instrument or item served.
- D. Identify control panels with minimum  $1 \text{ cm} (\frac{1}{2} \text{ in.})$  letters on laminated plastic nameplates.
- E. Identify all other control components with permanent labels. All plug-in components shall be labeled such that removal of the component does not remove the label.
- F. Identify room sensors related to terminal boxes or valves with nameplates.
- G. Manufacturers' nameplates and UL or CSA labels shall be visible and legible after equipment is installed.
- H. Identifiers shall match record documents.

### 3.14 CONTROLLERS

- A. Provide a separate controller for each AHU or other HVAC system. A DDC controller may control more than one system provided that all points associated with the system are assigned to the same DDC controller. Points used for control loop reset, such as outside air or space temperature, are exempt from this requirement.
- B. Building Controllers and Custom Application Controllers shall be selected to provide the required I/O point capacity required to monitor all of the hardware points listed in Section 15900 Appendix A (Sequences of Operation.

#### 3.15 PROGRAMMING

- A. Provide sufficient internal memory for the specified sequences of operation and trend logging
- B. Point Naming. Name points as shown on the equipment points list provided with each sequence of operation. See Section 23 09 93 (Sequences of Operation). If character limitations or space restrictions make it advisable to shorten the name, the abbreviations given in Appendix B to Section 23 09 93 may be used. Where multiple points with the same name reside in the same

controller, each point name may be customized with its associated Program Object number. For example, "Zone Temp 1" for Zone 1, "Zone Temp 2" for Zone 2.

- C. Software Programming.
  - 1. Provide programming for the system and adhere to the sequences of operation provided. All other system programming necessary for the operation of the system, but not specified in this document, also shall be provided by the contractor. Imbed into the control program sufficient comment statements to clearly describe each section of the program. The comment statements shall reflect the language used in the sequences of operation. Use the appropriate technique based on the following programming types:
    - a. Text-based:
      - 1) Must provide actions for all possible situations
      - 2) Must be modular and structured
      - 3) Must be commented
    - b. Graphic-based:
      - 1) Must provide actions for all possible situations
      - 2) Must be documented
    - c. Parameter-based:
      - 1) Must provide actions for all possible situations
      - 2) Must be documented.
        - D. Operator Interface.
  - Standard Graphics. Provide graphics for all mechanical systems and floor plans of the building. This includes each chilled water system, hot water system, chiller, boiler, air handler, and all terminal equipment. Point information on the graphic displays shall dynamically update. Show on each graphic all input and output points for the system. Also show relevant calculated points such as setpoints. As a minimum, show on each equipment graphic the input and output points and relevant calculated points as indicated on the applicable Points List in Section 23 Appendix A.
  - 2. The contractor shall provide all the labor necessary to install, initialize, start up, and troubleshoot all operator interface software and its functions as described in this section. This includes any operating system software, the operator interface database, and any third-party software installation and integration required for successful operation of the operator interface.

#### 3.16 CONTROL SYSTEM CHECKOUT AND TESTING

- A. Startup Testing. All testing listed in this article shall be performed by the contractor and shall make up part of the necessary verification of an operating control system. This testing shall be completed before the owner's representative is notified of the system demonstration
  - 1. The contractor shall furnish all labor and test apparatus required to calibrate and prepare for service of all instruments, controls, and accessory equipment furnished under this specification.
  - 2. Verify that all control wiring is properly connected and free of all shorts and ground faults. Verify that terminations are tight.
  - 3. Enable the control systems and verify calibration of all input devices individually. Perform calibration procedures according to manufacturers' recommendations.
  - 4. Verify that all binary output devices (relays, solenoid valves, two-position actuators and control valves, magnetic starters, etc.) operate properly and that the normal positions are correct.
  - 5. Verify that all analog output devices (I/Ps, actuators, etc.) are functional, that start and span are correct, and that direction and normal positions are correct. The contractor shall check all control valves and automatic dampers to ensure proper action and closure. The contractor shall make any necessary adjustments to valve stem and damper blade travel.
  - 6. Verify that the system operation adheres to the sequences of operation. Simulate and observe all modes of operation by overriding and varying inputs and schedules. Tune all DDC loops.
  - 7. Alarms and Interlocks:
    - a. Check each alarm separately by including an appropriate signal at a value that will trip the alarm.
    - b. Interlocks shall be tripped using field contacts to check the logic, as well as to ensure that the fail-safe condition for all actuators is in the proper direction.
    - c. Interlock actions shall be tested by simulating alarm conditions to check the initiating value of the variable and interlock action.

### 3.17 CONTROL SYSTEM DEMONSTRATION AND ACCEPTANCE

- A. Demonstration.
  - 1. Prior to acceptance, the control system shall undergo a series of performance tests to verify operation and compliance with this specification. These tests shall occur after the Contractor has completed the installation, started up the system, and performed his/her own tests.
  - 2. The tests described in this section are to be performed in addition to the tests that the contractor performs as a necessary part of the installation, start-up, and debugging
process and as specified in the "Control System Checkout and Testing" article in Part 3 of this specification. The engineer will be present to observe and review these tests. The engineer shall be notified at least 10 days in advance of the start of the testing procedures.

- 3. The demonstration process shall follow that approved in Part 1, "Submittals." The approved checklists and forms shall be completed for all systems as part of the demonstration.
- 4. The contractor shall provide at least two persons equipped with two-way communication and shall demonstrate actual field operation of each control and sensing point for all modes of operation including day, night, occupied, unoccupied, fire/smoke alarm, seasonal changeover, and power failure modes. The purpose is to demonstrate the calibration, response, and action of every point and system. Any test equipment required to prove the proper operation shall be provided by and operated by the contractor.
- 5. As each control input and output is checked, a log shall be completed showing the date, technician's initials, and any corrective action taken or needed.
- 6. Demonstrate compliance with Part 1, "System Performance."
- 7. Demonstrate compliance with sequences of operation through all modes of operation.
- 8. Demonstrate complete operation of operator interface.
- 9. Additionally, the following items shall be demonstrated:
  - a. DDC loop response. The contractor shall supply trend data output in a graphical form showing the step response of each DDC loop. The test shall show the loop's response to a change in set point, which represents a change of actuator position of at least 25% of its full range. The sampling rate of the trend shall be from 10 seconds to 3 minutes, depending on the speed of the loop. The trend data shall show for each sample the set point, actuator position, and controlled variable values. Any loop that yields unreasonably under-damped or over-damped control shall require further tuning by the Contractor.
  - b. Demand limiting. The contractor shall supply a trend data output showing the action of the demand limiting algorithm. The data shall document the action on a minute-by-minute basis over at least a 30-minute period. Included in the trend shall be building kW, demand limiting set point, and the status of sheddable equipment outputs.
  - c. Optimum start/stop. The contractor shall supply a trend data output showing the capability of the algorithm. The change-of-value or change-of-state trends shall include the output status of all optimally started and stopped equipment, as well as temperature sensor inputs of affected areas.
  - d. Interface to the building fire alarm system.
  - e. Operational logs for each system that indicate all set points, operating points, valve positions, mode, and equipment status shall be submitted to the architect/engineer.

These logs shall cover three 48-hour periods and have a sample frequency of not more than 10 minutes. The logs shall be provided in both printed and disk formats.

10. Any tests that fail to demonstrate the operation of the system shall be repeated at a later date. The contractor shall be responsible for any necessary repairs or revisions to the hardware or software to successfully complete all tests

## B. Acceptance.

- 1. All tests described in this specification shall have been performed to the satisfaction of both the engineer and owner prior to the acceptance of the control system as meeting the requirements of completion. Any tests that cannot be performed due to circumstances beyond the control of the contractor may be exempt from the completion requirements if stated as such in writing by the engineer. Such tests shall then be performed as part of the warranty.
- 2. The system shall not be accepted until all forms and checklists completed as part of the demonstration are submitted and approved as required in Part 1, "Submittals."

## 3.18 CLEANING

- A. The contractor shall clean up all debris resulting from his/her activities daily. The contractor shall remove all cartons, containers, crates, etc., under his/her control as soon as their contents have been removed. Waste shall be collected and placed in a designated location.
- B. At the completion of work in any area, the contractor shall clean all work, equipment, etc., keeping it free from dust, dirt, and debris, etc.
- C. At the completion of work, all equipment furnished under this section shall be checked for paint damage, and any factory-finished paint that has been damaged shall be repaired to match the adjacent areas. Any cabinet or enclosure that has been deformed shall be replaced with new material and repainted to match the adjacent areas.

### 3.19 TRAINING

- A. Provide training for a designated staff of Owner's representatives. Training shall be provided via self-paced training, web-based or computer-based training, classroom training, or a combination of training methods.
- B. Training shall enable students to accomplish the following objectives.
  - 1. Day-to-day Operators:
    - a. Proficiently operate the system
    - b. Understand control system architecture and configuration
    - c. Understand DDC system components
    - d. Understand system operation, including DDC system control and optimizing routines (algorithms)

- e. Operate the workstation and peripherals
- f. Log on and off the system
- g. Access graphics, point reports, and logs
- h. Adjust and change system set points, time schedules, and holiday schedules
- i. Recognize malfunctions of the system by observation of the printed copy and graphical visual signals
- j. Understand system drawings and Operation and Maintenance manual
- k. Understand the job layout and location of control components
- 1. Access data from DDC controllers and ASCs
- m. Operate portable operator's terminals
- 2. Advanced Operators:
  - a. Make and change graphics on the workstation
  - b. Create, delete, and modify alarms, including annunciation and routing of these
  - c. Create, delete, and modify point trend logs and graph or print these both on an adhoc basis and at user-definable time intervals
  - d. Create, delete, and modify reports
  - e. Add, remove, and modify system's physical points
  - f. Create, modify, and delete programming
  - g. Add panels when required
  - h. Add operator interface stations
  - i. Create, delete, and modify system displays, both graphical and others
  - j. Perform DDC system field checkout procedures
  - k. Perform DDC controller unit operation and maintenance procedures
  - 1. Perform workstation and peripheral operation and maintenance procedures
  - m. Perform DDC system diagnostic procedures
  - n. Configure hardware including PC boards, switches, communication, and I/O points
  - o. Maintain, calibrate, troubleshoot, diagnose, and repair hardware

- p. Adjust, calibrate, and replace system components
- 3. System Managers/Administrators:
  - a. Maintain software and prepare backups
  - b. Interface with job-specific, third-party operator software
  - c. Add new users and understand password security procedures
- C. Organize the training into sessions or modules for the three levels of operators listed above. (Day-to-Day Operators, Advanced Operators, System Managers and Administrators). Students will receive one or more of the training packages, depending on knowledge level required.
- D. Provide course outline and materials according to the "Submittals" article in Part 1 of this specification. Provide one copy of training material per student.
- E. The instructor(s) shall be factory-trained and experienced in presenting this material.
- F. Classroom training shall be done using a network of working controllers representative of installed hardware.
- 3.20 SEQUENCES OF OPERATION
  - A. See Section 23 Sequences of Operation.
- 3.21 CONTROL VALVE INSTALLATION
  - A. Valve submittals shall be coordinated for type, quantity, size, and piping configuration to ensure compatibility with pipe design.
  - B. Slip-stem control valves shall be installed so that the stem position is not more than 60 degrees from the vertical up position. Ball type control valves shall be installed with the stem in the horizontal position.
  - C. Valves shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
  - D. Control valves shall be installed so that they are accessible and serviceable and so that actuators may be serviced and removed without interference from structure or other pipes and/or equipment.
  - E. Isolation valves shall be installed so that the control valve body may be serviced without draining the supply/return side piping system. Unions shall be installed at all connections to screw-type control valves.
  - F. Provide tags for all control valves indicating service and number. Tags shall be brass, 1.5 inch in diameter, with ¼ inch high letters. Securely fasten with chain and hook. Match identification numbers as shown on approved controls shop drawings.

## 3.22 CONTROL DAMPER INSTALLATION

- A. Damper submittals shall be coordinated for type, quantity, and size to ensure compatibility with sheet metal design.
- B. Duct openings shall be free of any obstruction or irregularities that might interfere with blade or linkage rotation or actuator mounting. Duct openings shall measure <sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> in. larger than damper dimensions and shall be square, straight, and level.
- C. Individual damper sections, as well as entire multiple section assemblies, must be completely square and free from racking, twisting, or bending. Measure diagonally from upper corners to opposite lower corners of each damper section. Both dimensions must be within 0.3 cm (1/8 in.) of each other.
- D. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for field installation of control dampers. Unless specifically designed for vertical blade application, dampers must be mounted with blade axis horizontal.
- E. Install extended shaft or jackshaft according to manufacturer's instructions. (Typically, a sticker on the damper face shows recommended extended shaft location. Attach shaft on labeled side of damper to that blade.)
- F. Damper blades, axles, and linkage must operate without binding. Before system operation, cycle damper after installation to ensure proper operation. On multiple section assemblies, all sections must open and close simultaneously.
- G. Provide a visible and accessible indication of damper position on the drive shaft end.
- H. Support ductwork in area of damper when required to prevent sagging due to damper weight.
- I. After installation of low-leakage dampers with seals, caulk between frame and duct or opening to prevent leakage around perimeter of damper.

### 3.23 SMOKE DAMPER INSTALLATION

- A. The contractor shall coordinate all smoke and smoke/fire damper installation, wiring, and checkout to ensure that these dampers function properly and that they respond to the proper fire alarm system general, zone, and/or detector trips. The contractor shall immediately report any discrepancies to the engineer no less than two weeks prior to inspection by the code authority having jurisdiction.
- B. Provide complete submittal data to controls system subcontractor for coordination of duct smoke detector interface to HVAC systems.

#### 3.24 DUCT SMOKE DETECTION

- A. Submit data for coordination of duct smoke detector interface to HVAC systems as required in Part 1, "Submittals."
- B. This Contractor shall provide a dry-contact alarm output in the same room as the HVAC equipment to be controlled.

# 3.25 START-UP AND CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Start up, check out, and test all hardware and software and verify communication between all components.
  - 1. Verify that all control wiring is properly connected and free of all shorts and ground faults. Verify that terminations are tight.
  - 2. Verify that all analog and binary input/output points read properly.
  - 3. Verify alarms and interlocks.
  - 4. Verify operation of the integrated system.

END OF SECTION 230900